

*VETTIUS VALENS*  
*ANTHOLOGIES*

TRANSLATED BY MARK T. RILEY  
Annotated by Jane Griscti

## PREFACE

---

This is a copy of the *Vettius Valens Anthologies* that Prof. Riley translated and kindly made freely available on his [website](#) and which was re-formatted as a PDF file and made freely available by [Ile Spasev](#).

I have taken a number of liberties with the layout, primarily to make the text easier to read. I have kept Prof. Riley's angle brackets (<>) which mark his clarifications within the text. I have also kept his references to the pages of the original Greek texts edited by Wilhelm Kroll (1908 edition) (/#K/) and David Pingree (1986 edition) (/#P/).

The public domain [StarFont Sans](#) astrological fonts used in this document were created by Anthony I.P. Owen and made available as a Latex package by Matthew Skala.

This document was built from Latex files created with the [TexWorks](#) editor.

## Annotations

Annotations have been added primarily as margin notes and footnotes.

In addition, comments/questions/musings/summaries or other assertions appear in *italics* between square brackets (*[my interjections]*).

Any Table of Content entries that appear in bracketed *italics* are not part of the original text. For example, the following entry under Book I, *[General Indications]* is a section title not found in the original text.

## Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used in the text:

- CA** *Carmen Astrologicum* of Dorotheus of Sidon trans. by David Pingree.
- DF** *Definitions and Foundations* trans. by Robert H. Schmidt. The text contains translations of texts from Thrasyllus and Serapio who were near contemporaries of Dorotheus.
- GH** *Greek Horoscopes* by O. Neugebauer and H.B. Van Hoesen. Reference numbers refer to the book's chart numbers i.e. L50, L113, etc.
- LH** *Liber Hermetis* trans. by Robert Zoller. An anonymous collection of early Greek horoscopy attributed to Hermes Trismegistus.
- PT** *Ptolemy Tetrabiblos* trans. by F. E. Robbins.
- VRS** *Vettius Valens: The Anthology* trans. by Robert H. Schmidt.

CONTENTS

---

<b>Preface</b>	<b>i</b>
<b>Annotations</b> . . . . .	<b>i</b>
<b>Abbreviations</b> . . . . .	<b>i</b>
 <b>Contents</b>	 <b>iii</b>
 <b>List of Figures</b>	 <b>xiii</b>
 <b>List of Tables</b>	 <b>xv</b>
 <b>1 Book I</b>	 <b>1</b>
<b>1.1 The Nature of the Stars</b> . . . . .	<b>1</b>
<i>[Sun]</i> . . . . .	1
<i>[Moon]</i> . . . . .	1
<i>[Saturn]</i> . . . . .	2
<i>[Jupiter]</i> . . . . .	3
<i>[Mars]</i> . . . . .	4
<i>[Venus]</i> . . . . .	5
<i>[Mercury]</i> . . . . .	6
<i>[General Indications]</i> . . . . .	8
<b>1.2 The Nature of the Twelve Zodiacal Signs</b>	<b>9</b>
<i>[Aries]</i> . . . . .	9
<i>[Taurus]</i> . . . . .	10
<i>[Gemini]</i> . . . . .	12
<i>[Cancer]</i> . . . . .	13
<i>[Leo]</i> . . . . .	15
<i>[Virgo]</i> . . . . .	16
<i>[Libra]</i> . . . . .	17
<i>[Scorpio]</i> . . . . .	18
<i>[Sagittarius]</i> . . . . .	19
<i>[Capricorn]</i> . . . . .	20
<i>[Aquarius]</i> . . . . .	21
<i>[Pisces]</i> . . . . .	22
<b>1.3 The 50 Terms</b> . . . . .	<b>25</b>
<i>[Aries]</i> . . . . .	25

<i>[Taurus]</i> . . . . .	25
<i>[Gemini]</i> . . . . .	26
<i>[Cancer]</i> . . . . .	26
<i>[Leo]</i> . . . . .	27
<i>[Virgo]</i> . . . . .	27
<i>[Libra]</i> . . . . .	28
<i>[Scorpio]</i> . . . . .	29
<i>[Sagittarius]</i> . . . . .	29
<i>[Capricorn]</i> . . . . .	30
<i>[Aquarius]</i> . . . . .	31
<i>[Pisces]</i> . . . . .	31
<b>1.4 Finding the Ascendant</b> . . . . .	33
<b>1.5 The Gnomon of the Ascendant (5K)</b> . .	36
<b>1.6 The Midheaven (6K, 5P)</b> . . . . .	39
<b>1.7 The Rising Times of the Signs (7K, 6P)</b>	40
<b>1.8 Listening and Beholding Signs (8K, 7P)</b>	42
<b>1.9 A Handy Method for New and Full Moons (9K, 8P)</b> . . . . .	43
<b>1.10 A Handy Method for the Seven Zone System [or the Sabbatical Day] (10K, 9P)</b>	45
<b>1.11 The House Ruler of the Year (11K, 10P)</b>	47
<b>1.12 Masculine and Feminine Degrees (12K, 11P)</b> . . . . .	49
<b>1.13 The Visibility Periods of the Moon (13K, 12P)</b> . . . . .	50
<b>1.14 The Invisibility Period of the Moon (14K, 13P)</b> . . . . .	51
<b>1.15 The Third, Seventh, and Fortieth Days of the Moon (15K, 14P)</b> . . . . .	52
<b>1.16 A Handy Method for Finding the As- cending Node (16K,15P)</b> . . . . .	53
<b>1.18 The Determination of the Steps and the Winds of the Moon (18K, 16P)</b> . . . . .	55
<b>1.19 A Hipparcheion Concerning the Calcu- lation of the Sign of the Moon (19K,17P)</b>	56
<b>1.20 Reckoning the Sun and the Five Planets (20K,18P)</b> . . . . .	59

1.21	Transits and The Combination of the Stars (21K,19P) . . . . .	64
	<i>[Transits]</i> . . . . .	64
	<i>[Saturn]</i> . . . . .	65
	<i>[Jupiter]</i> . . . . .	66
	<i>[Venus]</i> . . . . .	67
	<i>[Mercury]</i> . . . . .	68
	<i>[Sun and Moon]</i> . . . . .	69
1.22	The Combination of Three Stars (22K,20P) . . . . .	71
	<i>[Saturn in Combination]</i> . . . . .	71
	<i>[Jupiter in Combination]</i> . . . . .	75
	<i>[Venus in Combination]</i> . . . . .	78
	<i>[Mercury in Combination]</i> . . . . .	79
	<i>[Mars in Combination]</i> . . . . .	80
1.23	Conception (23K,21P) . . . . .	83
1.24	Seven-Month Children (24K,22P) . . . . .	87
2	Book II (55K,54P) . . . . .	89
2.1	The Triangles <i>[Triplcities]</i> . . . . .	89
2.2	The Distinguishing Characteristics of the Triangles, the Houserulers, the Helpers, and the Sects of the Sun and the Moon—for Day or Night Births . . . . .	91
2.3	The Lot of Fortune and its Houseruler . . . . .	95
2.4	The Star Which Holds the Ascendant or The Lot . . . . .	96
2.5	The [XII] Place of the Bad Daimon. Many Configurations . . . . .	99
2.6	The [XI] Place of the Good Daimon. Many Configurations. The Hearing and the Beholding Signs Must Also Be Investigated. . . . .	100
2.7	[The X Place]—Midheaven . . . . .	101

(7K,8P) The IX Place of the God Sun, just before MC. The Ninth Place from the Ascendant. It Has Many Configu- rations . . . . .	102
2.8 The VIII Place of Death. Various Views (8K,9P) . . . . .	103
2.9 The [VII] Place of the Descendant (9K,10P) . . . . .	104
2.10 The VI Place. The Place of Mars (10K,11P) . . . . .	105
2.11 The V Place. Many Theorems (11K,12P)	106
2.12 The IV Place—Lower Midheaven (12K,13P) . . . . .	107
2.13 The III Place. The Place of the Goddess Moon (13K,14P) . . . . .	108
2.14 The II Place, Called the Gate of Hades. The Place Rising After the Ascendant (14K,15P) . . . . .	110
2.15 Nine Names of the Places (15K,16P) . .	112
2.16 The Trine Influences of the Stars on Prosperity or Poverty. The Configura- tions of Trine, Sextile, and Opposition (16K,17P) . . . . .	113
2.17 The Lot of Fortune as the Ascendant (17K,18P) . . . . .	124
2.18 The Exaltation of the Sun and Moon. Their Effects on Prosperity (18K,19P) .	126
2.19 The Lot of Fortune and Daimon. Their Influence on Prosperity and the Out- come of Actions (19K,20P) . . . . .	127
2.20 The 11th Place [Relative to the Lot] of Fortune and its Influence on Prosperity (20K,21P) . . . . .	129
2.21 Examples for the Preceding Chapters (21K,22P) . . . . .	131
[Chart 1 [GH L50] <i>Illustrious and Distin-</i> <i>guished</i> ] . . . . .	131

<i>[Chart 2 [GH L95] Rise from Mediocrity]</i>	133
<i>[Chart 3 [GH L85] Rise from Ordinary Means to Wealth]</i>	134
<i>[Chart 4 [GH L83] Rise through Violent Means]</i>	135
<i>[Chart 5 [GH L74] From Servitude to Power]</i>	136
<i>[Chart 6 [GH L72] Rise to High Priesthood]</i>	137
<i>[Chart 7 [GH L82] Rise to High Priesthood]</i>	138
<i>[Chart 8 [GH L97] Raised Livelihood]</i>	139
<i>[Chart 9 [GH L95] From Debt to Inheritance and Business Prosperity]</i>	140
<i>[Chart 10 [GH L65] Born into Wealth]</i>	141
<i>[Chart 11 [GH L105] Prosperity to Exile]</i>	142
<i>[Chart 12 [GH L61] Political Prestige to Vagabond]</i>	143
<i>[Chart 13 [GH L109] From Slavery to Honors]</i>	144
<i>[Chart 14 [GH L62] Distinguished Priest with Many Troubles and Losses]</i>	145
<b>2.22 Notable and Distinguished Nativities. Also Ignoble and Debased Nativities (22K,23P)</b>	146
<i>[Interperating Fortune, Daimon, Basis, and Accomplishment]</i>	146
<i>[Unfortunate Indications]</i>	149
<b>2.23 The Lot of Debt (23K,24P)</b>	151
<b>2.24 The Lot of Theft (24K,25P)</b>	152
<b>2.25 The Lot of Deceit (25K,26P)</b>	153
<i>⟨Ignoble and Debased Nativities⟩</i>	153
<b>2.26 Examples of the Previously Mentioned Places (26K,27P)</b>	156
<i>[Chart 15 [GH L188] Fortunate, A Leader]</i>	156
<i>[Chart 16 [GH L86] A Governor]</i>	157
<i>[Chart 17 [GH L78] Exile and Violent Death]</i>	158
<i>[Chart 18 [GH L101] Exile and Suicide]</i>	159



<b>2.27 Propitious and Impropitious Periods.</b>	
The Length of Life Calculated from the	
Angles and the Signs Following the An-	
gles (27K,28P) . . . . .	160
<b>2.28 Travel, from Hermippos (28K,29P) . . .</b>	162
<b>2.29 Travel (29K,30P) . . . . .</b>	163
<b>2.30 The Predecease of Parents, with Exam-</b>	
<b>    ples (30K,31P) . . . . .</b>	169
<b>2.31 [Another Method.] About Parents,</b>	
<b>    from Timaios (31K,32P) . . . . .</b>	172
<i>[Operative Planets, Signs]</i> . . . . .	172
<b>2.32 The Loss of Parents (32K,33P) . . . . .</b>	174
<b>2.33 The Separation of Parents (33K,34P) .</b>	176
<b>2.34 Free and Slave Nativities (34K,35P) . .</b>	178
<b>2.35 The Eleven Phases of the Moon and The</b>	
<b>    Influence of Their Effects (35K,36P) . .</b>	180
<i>[What Each Phase Indicates and What Ef-</i>	
<i>fects It Has]</i> . . . . .	180
⟨A personal comment⟩ . . . . .	182
<b>2.36 Injuries and Diseases, with Examples In</b>	
<b>    Each Sign: What Injuries and Diseases</b>	
<b>    are Caused by Aries and the Succeeding</b>	
<b>    Signs (36K,37P) . . . . .</b>	184
<i>[Indications from Signs]</i> . . . . .	185
<i>[Examples]</i> . . . . .	189
<i>[Chart 20: Blind, gouty]</i> . . . . .	189
<i>[Chart 21: Bald, blind]</i> . . . . .	190
<i>[General Delineation Notes]</i> . . . . .	190
<i>[Chart 22: Tender feet, a lunatic]</i> .	192
<i>[Chart 23: Visions]</i> . . . . .	193
<i>[Chart 24: Homosexual]</i> . . . . .	194
<i>[Chart 25: Castration]</i> . . . . .	195
<i>[Chart 26: Blind]</i> . . . . .	196
<i>[Chart 27: Leprosy, mange]</i> . . . . .	197
<i>[Chart 28: Abnormally short arms]</i> .	198
<i>[Chart 29: Insane]</i> . . . . .	199
<i>[Chart 30: Hunchback]</i> . . . . .	200

2.37	Marriage, Wedlock, and Happiness.	
	Various Theorems and Configurations	
	(37K,38P) . . . . .	201
2.38	More About Marriage. Examples. (38K)	208
2.39	Children and Childlessness . . . . .	213
2.40	Brothers . . . . .	215
2.41	Violent Deaths. Examples. . . . .	216
	[Indications from Signs] . . . . .	219
	Examples . . . . .	222
	[Chart 31: Drowning] . . . . .	223
	[Chart 32: Beheaded] . . . . .	224
	[Chart 33: Beheaded] . . . . .	225
	[Chart 34: Beheaded] . . . . .	226
	[Chart 35: Roasted in his Bath] . . . . .	227
	[Chart 36: Burnt Alive] . . . . .	228
	[Chart 37: Thrown to the Lions] . . . . .	229
	[Chart 38: Poisoned] . . . . .	230
	[Chart 39: Drowned] . . . . .	231
	[Chart 40: Hung Himself] . . . . .	232
	[Chart 41: Thrown to the Lions] . . . . .	233
	[The Opposition, Malefics, and Evil Men] . . . . .	234
3	Book III (132K,125P)	235
3.1	The Control . . . . .	235
	[Day Births] . . . . .	235
	[Night Births] . . . . .	237
3.2	The Significant Degrees of the Angles**	239
	[Finding the Operative Degrees] . . . . .	239
	[Another Method**] . . . . .	240
3.3	The Vital Sector . . . . .	241
3.4	The Winds of the Stars, their Exalta-	
	tions, and their Steps . . . . .	247
	[Exaltations and Depressions] . . . . .	247
	[Winds and Steps] . . . . .	247
	[Winds and the Apheta] . . . . .	248
3.5	The Sects of the Stars . . . . .	250

3.6	Examples Illustrating the Previous Chapters (6K) . . . . .	251
3.7	Another Method from Critodemus about Hostile Places and Vital Sectors: from the Moon and the Ascendant. . . . .	253
3.8	Hostile Stars and Critical Places. The First Table of Critodemus (8K,6P) . . . . .	254
3.9	Winds and Turns (9K,6P) . . . . .	256
3.10	From the Books of Valens Concerning the Numerical Lot and the Length of Life. The Same Author on the Topic of Propitious Times, with Examples (10K,7P) . . . . .	258
3.11	The 7-Day and the 9-Day Methods for the Critical Period (11K,8P) . . . . .	262
3.12	The Method of New and Full Moons. Conception with Reference to the Ascending Node. Length of Life, with Examples (12K,9P) . . . . .	265
3.13	How the Position of the Sun, the Moon, and the Ascendant at the Conception Can Be Accurately Found (13K,10P) . . . . .	269
3.14	The Lot of Fortune and its Relationship to the Topic “Length of Life,” with Examples. Included are the Minimum Periods of the Stars (14K,11P) . . . . .	274
3.15	Critical Years (15K,12P) . . . . .	279
	The Mean Years of the Stars (15K,13P) . . . . .	280
4	Book IV (158K,150P) . . . . .	284
4.1	The Distribution of Periods . . . . .	284
4.2	The Vital Sector . . . . .	285
4.3	The Distribution of Days . . . . .	286
	To Find the Days of Each Star . . . . .	286
4.4	The Distribution of the Chronocratorships Starting with the Lot of Fortune and with Daimon. . . . .	287

4.5	Making Connections. The Mutual Transmissions of the Stars. . . . .	292
4.6	How Many Years Each Sign Allots. The Maximum Years of Each Star. . . . .	293
4.7	The Distribution of the Chronocratorships Using the Lot of Fortune and Daimon. The Transits of the Stars and Houserulers. The New and Full Moon, with Examples. Mutual Transmission. . . . .	295
4.8	A Compelling Example . . . . .	299
4.9	The Universal Year. The Year with Respect to the Distribution: How Many Days It Has and How It Must Be Calculated. . . . .	302
4.10	The Breakdown into Longer and Shorter Periods: the Years, Months, Days and Hours of Each Star. The Use of These Periods in Nativities. . . . .	303
4.11	The Operative Year and the Method of Fractions. . . . .	307
4.12	The Names of the Twelve Places. The Twelve-Fold Division. . . . .	318
4.13	The Transmission From an Exaltation to an Exaltation. . . . .	322
4.14	The Phases and Transits of the Stars. . . . .	324
4.15	The III Place and the IX Place from the Ascendant. . . . .	326
4.16	Nativities of Varying Fortunes. . . . .	328
4.17	The Transmissions of the Stars and the Ascendant. The Results. . . . .	335
	[The Distributions of the Sun] . . . . .	335
4.18	The Distributions of the Moon. . . . .	338
4.19	Distributions of the Ascendant . . . . .	340
4.20	The Distributions of Saturn . . . . .	341
4.21	The Distributions of Jupiter . . . . .	344
4.22	The Distributions of Mars . . . . .	346
4.23	The Distributions of Venus . . . . .	349

4.24	The Distributions of Mercury . . . . .	352
4.25	The Distributions of the Four Lots . . . . .	354
4.26	The One-fourth [Method] for the Distribution of the Chronocrator- ships According to the Spheres Up- wards—According to Critodemus . . . . .	357
4.27	Another Method for Years, from Seuthos. The School of Hermeios, Which Starts from the Sun, the Moon, the Ascendant, or the Lot of Fortune . . . . .	358
4.28	The Position of the Month . . . . .	360
4.29	The Calculation of the Days . . . . .	361
4.30	Propitious and Impropitious Chronocratorships with Reference to the One-Fourth-Part of the Cycle . . . . .	363
5	Book V (208K,198P) . . . . .	368
5.1	The Crisis Producing Place . . . . .	368
5.2	The Critical Year. The Ecliptic Place. . . . .	372
5.3	Initiatives [Elections] . . . . .	375
5.4	Critical Signs (4K, 3P) . . . . .	377
5.5	The Recasting of a Horoscope with Ref- erence to the Topic of Propitious and Impropitious [Times] . . . . .	378
5.6	The Operative Month: For Day Births, From the Current Sun to the Moon at Birth, and the Same Distance from the Ascendant (6K, 4P) . . . . .	379
5.7	The Operative and the Inauspicious Day. This is the Real Distribution of the Days . . . . .	381
5.8	The Inclinations of the Moon At the First of the Month, Starting with Leo, then the Others Signs in Order . . . . .	383

## LIST OF FIGURES

---

2.1	Chart 1 [II.22.1, GH L50]	131
2.2	Chart 2 [II.21.2, GH 95,V,18]	133
2.3	Chart 3 [II.21.3, GH L85]	134
2.4	Chart 4 [II.21.4, GH L83]	135
2.5	Chart 5 [V II.21.5, GH L74,XI]	136
2.6	Chart 6 [II.21.6, GH L72]	137
2.7	Chart 7 [II.21.7, GH L82]	138
2.8	Chart 8 [II.21.8, GH L97,XI]	139
2.9	Chart 9 [II.21.9, GH L95,V]	140
2.10	Chart 10 [II.21.10, GH L65,X]	141
2.11	Chart 11 [II.21.11, GH L105]	142
2.12	Chart 12 [II.21.12, GH L61,V]	143
2.13	Chart 13 [II.21.13, GH L109]	144
2.14	Chart 14 [II.21.14, GH L62]	145
2.15	Chart 15 [II.26.1, GH L188]	156
2.16	Chart 16 [II.26.2, GH L86]	157
2.17	Chart 17 [II.26.3, GH L78]	158
2.18	Chart 18 [II.26.4, GH L101,III]	159
2.19	Chart 19 [II.30.1, GH L120]	170
2.20	Chart 20 [II.36.1, GH L87]	189
2.21	Chart 21 [II.36.2, GH L118]	190
2.22	Chart 22 [II.36.3, GH L106]	192
2.23	Chart 23 [II.36.4, GH L85]	193
2.24	Chart 24 [II.36.5, GH L116]	194
2.25	Chart 25 [II.36.6, GH L117]	195
2.26	Chart 26 [II.36.7, GH L92]	196
2.27	Chart 27 [II.36.8, GH L83]	197
2.28	Chart 28 [II.36.9, GH L104]	198
2.29	Chart 29 [II.36.10, GH L108]	199
2.30	Chart 30 [II.36.11, GH L112]	200
2.31	Chart 31 [II.41.1, GH L123]	223
2.32	Chart 32 [II.41.2, GH L97]	224
2.33	Chart 33 [II.41.3, GH L87]	225
2.34	Chart 34 [II.41.4, GH L86]	226
2.35	Chart 35 [II.41.5, GH L101]	227

2.36	Chart 36 [II.41.6, GH L103]	228
2.37	Chart 37 [II.41.7, GH L115]	229
2.38	Chart 38 [II.41.8, GH L65]	230
2.39	Chart 39 [II.41.9, GH L88]	231
2.40	Chart 40 [II.41.10, GH L89]	232
2.41	Chart 41 [II.41.11, GH L91]	233
3.1	Chart 42 [III.06.1, GH L75]	251
3.2	Chart 43 [III.06.2, GH L110]	252
3.3	Chart 44 [III.10.1, GH L114]	260
3.4	Chart 45 [III.10.2, GH L127]	261
3.5	Chart 46 [III.13.1, GH L75,I]	271
3.6	Chart 47 [III.13.2, GH L74,IV]	272
3.7	Chart 48 [III.13.3, GH L115,II]	273
3.8	Chart 42a [III.14.1, GH L75]	277
3.9	Chart 49 [III.14.2, GH L135]	278
3.10	Chart 7a [III.15.1, GH L82]	281
3.11	Chart 50 [III.15.2, GH L102, IV, a]	282
3.12	Chart 51 [III.15.3, GH L102, IV, b]	283
4.1	Chart 42b [IV.08.1, GH L75]	299
4.2	Chart 52 [IV.10.1, GH L152]	304
4.3	Chart 19a [IV.11.1, GH L120]	310
5.1	Chart 53 [V.1, GH L121]	370

LIST OF TABLES

---

5.1   Inclinations of the Moon . . . . . 383



## BOOK I

---

### 1.1 The Nature of the Stars

#### *[Sun]*

In a nativity the all-seeing Sun, nature's fire and intellectual light, the organ of mental perception.

Sun ☉

**Indicates:** kingship, rule, intellect, intelligence, beauty, motion, loftiness of fortune, the ordinance of the gods, judgment, public reputation, action, authority over the masses, the father, the master, friendship, noble personages, honors consisting of pictures, statues, and garlands, high priesthoods, <rule over> one's country <and over> other places.

**Of the parts of the body:** the sun rules the head.

**Of the sense organs:** it rules the right eye.

**Of the trunk:** it rules the heart.

**Of the spiritual (i.e. the perceptive) faculties:** the nerves.

**Of materials:** it rules gold.

**Of fruits:** it rules wheat and barley.

**Sect:** day.

**Colour:** yellowish.

**Taste:** bitter.

---

#### *[Moon]*

The moon, lit by the reflection of the sun's light and possessing a borrowed light, in a nativity ...

Moon ☾

**Indicates:** man's life, body, the mother, conception, <beauty>, appearance, sight, living together (i.e. legiti-

mate marriage), nurture, the older brother, housekeeping, the queen, the mistress of the house, possessions, fortune, the city, the assembly of the people, gains, expenses, the household, voyages, travel and wanderings (it does not provide straight pathways because of Cancer <sup>1</sup>).

**Body:** The Moon rules the parts of the body as follows: the left eye, the stomach, the breasts, the breath, the spleen, the dura mater, the marrow (as a result it causes dropsy/moist syndromes).

**Of materials:** it rules silver and glass.

**Sect:** It is of the night sect

**Color:** green in color, and,

**Taste:** salty in taste. /2K/

### *[Saturn]*

Saturn makes those born under him petty, /2P/ malignant, care-worn, self-depreciating, solitary, deceitful, secretive in their trickery, strict, downcast, with a hypocritical air, squalid, black-clad, importunate, sad-looking, miserable, with a nautical bent, plying waterside trades.

Saturn ♄

Saturn also causes humblings, sluggishness, unemployment, obstacles in business, interminable lawsuits, subversion of business, secrets, imprisonment, chains, griefs, accusations, tears, bereavement, capture, exposures of children.

Saturn makes serfs and farmers because of its rule over the land, and it causes men to be renters of property, tax farmers, and violent in action.

<sup>1</sup>Robert Schmidt, in his translation of Valens *Anthologies* Book I, has this line as “for, it does not maintain a straight line through Cancer.”

It puts into one's hands great ranks and distinguished positions, supervisions, management of others' property, and the fathership of others' children.

**Of materials:** it rules lead, wood, and stone.

**Of the limbs of the body:** it rules the legs, the knees, the tendons, the lymph, the phlegm, the bladder, the kidneys, and the internal, hidden organs.

**Indicates:** Saturn is indicative of injuries arising from cold and moisture, such as dropsy, neuralgia, gout, cough, dysentery, hernia, spasms. It is indicative of these syndromes: possession, homosexuality, and depravity.

Saturn makes bachelors and widows, bereavements, and childlessness. It causes violent deaths by water, strangulation, imprisonment, or dysentery. It also causes falling on the face. It is the star of Nemesis.

**Sect:** it is of the day sect.

**Colour:** It is like castor in color and

**Taste:** astringent in taste.

### *[Jupiter]*

**Indicates:** Jupiter indicates childbearing, engendering, desire, loves, political ties, acquaintance, friendships with great men, prosperity, salaries, great gifts, an abundance of crops, justice, offices, office holding, ranks, authority over temples, arbitrations, trusts, inheritance, brotherhood, fellowship, beneficence, the secure possession of goods, relief from troubles, release from bonds, freedom, deposits in trust, money, stewardships.

Jupiter ♃

**Of the external body parts:** it rules the thighs and the feet. (Consequently in the games Jupiter governs

the race.)

**Of the internal parts:** it rules the sperm, the uterus, the liver, the parts of the right side.

**Of materials:** it rules tin.

**Sect:** It is of the day sect.

**Colour:** In color it is grey verging on white and

**Taste:** is sweet in taste.

### *[Mars]*

**Indicates:** Mars indicates force, wars, plunderings, screams, violence, whoring, the loss of property, banishment, exile, alienation from parents, /**3P**/ capture, the deaths of wives, /**3K**/ abortions, love affairs, marriages, the loss of goods, lies, vain hopes, strong-armed robbery, banditry, looting, quarrels among friends, anger, fighting, verbal abuse, hatreds, lawsuits.

Mars ♂

Mars brings violent murders, slashings and bloodshed, attacks of fever, ulceration, boils, burns, chains, torture, masculinity, false oaths, wandering, embassies under difficult circumstances, actions involving fire or iron, craft-work, masonry.

In addition Mars causes commands, campaigns and leadership, infantrymen, governorships, hunting, wild game, falls from heights or from animals, weak vision, strokes.

**Of the body part:** Mars rules the head, the seat, the genitals.

**Of the internal parts:** it rules the blood, the sperm ducts, the bile, the elimination of excrement, the parts in the rear, the back, and the underside. It controls the hard and the abrupt.

**Of materials:** it rules iron, decoration of clothing (because of Aries), as well as wine and beans.

**Sect:** It is of the night sect.

**Colour:** red in color and

**Taste:** acid in taste.

### [*Venus*]

Venus is desire and love.

Venus ♀

**Indicates:** It indicates the mother and nurture. It makes priesthoods, school superintendencies, high offices with the right to wear a gold ring or a crown, cheerfulness, friendship, companionship, the acquisition of property, the purchase of ornaments, agreements on favorable terms, marriages, pure trades, fine voices, a taste for music, sweet singing, beauty, painting, mixing of colors both in embroidery, dyeing, and unguent making. <Venus makes> the inventors and masters of these crafts, as well as craftsmanship or trade, and work in emeralds, precious stones, and ivory.

Within its terms and degrees in the zodiac, Venus causes men to be gold-spinners, gold workers, barbers, and people fond of cleanliness and toys.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

It bestows the office of supervisor of weights and measures, the standards of weights and measures, markets, factories, the giving and receiving <of gifts>, laughter, good cheer, ornamentation, and hunting in moist places.

Venus gives benefits from royal women or from one's own, and it brings very high rank when it operates in such affairs.

**Of the parts of the body:** it rules the neck, the face, the lips, the sense of smell, the front parts from the feet to the head, the parts of intercourse.

**Of the inner parts:** /4P/ it rules the lungs. It is a recipient of support from others and of pleasure.

**Of materials:** /4K/ it rules precious stones and fancy jewelry.

**Of fruits:** it rules the olive.

**Sect:** It is of the night sect.

**Colour:** white in color.

**Taste:** very greasy in taste.

### *[Mercury]*

**Indicates:** Mercury indicates education, letters, disputation, reasoning, brotherhood, interpretation, embassies, number, accounts, geometry, markets, youth, games, theft, association, communication, service, gain, discoveries, obedience, sport, wrestling, declamation, certification, supervision, weighing and measuring, the testing of coinage, hearing, versatility.

Mercury ☿

It is the bestower of forethought and intelligence, the lord of brothers and of younger children, and the creator of all marketing and banking.

In its own character, it makes temple builders, modelers, sculptors, doctors, secretaries, legal advisors, orators, philosophers, architects, musicians, prophets, diviners, augurs, dream interpreters, braiders, weavers, systematic physicians, those in charge of war and strategy, and those undertaking any unusual, systematic work in accounting or with reasoning.

Mercury makes weight lifters and mimes, those making their livelihood with displays of skill, deception, gambling, or sleight of hand. It also rules those skilled interpreters of the heavens, those who by using pleasure or winning charm, earn fame for their amazing feats—all for the sake of gain.

This star's effects go in many directions, depending on the changes of the zodiac and the interactions of the stars, and yields quite varied results: knowledge for some, selling for others, service for others, trade or teaching for others, farming or temple service or public <employment> for still others.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

To some it grants authority, rentals, labor contracting, rhythmical performance, the display of public service, the acquisition of personal attendants or the right of wearing temple-linen, robed in the luxury appropriate to gods or rulers.

As for the end result—Mercury will make everything capricious in outcome and quite disturbed. Even more, it causes those having this star in malefic signs or degrees to become even worse.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

**Of the parts of the body:** it rules the hands, the shoulders, the fingers, the joints, the belly, the sense of hearing, the arteries, /5P/ the intestines, the tongue.

**Of materials:** it rules /5K/ copper and all coins used in buying and selling—for the god makes exchanges....<sup>1</sup> <It is blue in color, sharp in taste.>

---

<sup>1</sup>Information on ☿'s sect is missing. Ptolemy says he is diurnal when rising, as the “morning star,” and nocturnal when setting as the “evening star” (PT.43).

*[General Indications]*

The benefic stars which are appropriately and favorably situated bring about their proper effects according to their own nature and the nature of their sign, with the aspects and conjunctions of each star being blended. If however they are unfavorably situated, they are indicative of reversals.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

In the same way even the malefic stars, when they are operative in appropriate places in their own sect, are bestowers of good and indicative of the greatest positions and success; when they are inoperative, they bring about disasters and accusations.

MALEFIC AS  
BENEFIC

...Each star is the ruler of its own “element” in the universe with reference to <the stars’> sympathy or antipathy or mutual influence. Their <aspects> are blended according to their “applications” or “separations,” their “superior aspects” or “blockages,” their “attendance,” their “ray-shooting,” or the “approach” of their masters.

METHOD

The Moon becomes the ruler of foresight.

The Sun the ruler of light.

Saturn the ruler of ignorance and necessity.

Jupiter the ruler of rank, crowns and zeal.

Mars becomes the ruler of action and effort.

Venus the ruler of love, desire, and beauty.

Mercury the ruler of law, friendship, and trust.

These stars have their own effects. . . .

Now that these matters have been settled, the nature of the twelve signs must be mentioned.



## 1.2 The Nature of the Twelve Zodiacal Signs

### [*Aries*]

Aries is the house of Mars, a masculine sign, tropic, terrestrial, governing, fiery, free, upward-trending, semi-vocal, noble, changeable, procuratorial, public, civic, with few offspring, servile, the Midheaven<sup>1</sup> of the universe and the cause of rank, two-toned (since the Sun and the Moon make white lichen). It is also unaspected and ecliptic.

Aries ♈

Depending on its relationship with the houseruler, men born under this sign will be brilliant, distinguished, authoritarian, just, hard on offenders, free, governing, bold in thought, boastful, great-hearted, restless, unstable, haughty, inflated, intimidating, /6K/ quickly changing, wealthy.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

When the houserulers are favorably situated and have benefics in aspect, kings and powerful men are born, those having the say over life and death.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

**Climate:** /6P/ Aries is by nature watery, with thunder and hail. From its first degree to the equinox, it is stormy, full of hail, windy, destructive. The middle degrees up to 15° are mild <and fruitful; the following degrees are hot and cause plagues> of animals.

**Fixed Stars:** This sign has 19 bright stars. On the belt are 14 bright stars, 27 dim, 28 somewhat bright, and 48 faint.

**Paranatellonta:** The constellations that rise at the same time as Aries are (in the north) the first part of Perseus, and the rear and the left parts of Auriga, and (in the south) the fin and tail of Cetus. <When Aries is rising,> the feet of Bootes (in the north) and the hind parts of Lupus (in the south) are setting.

---

<sup>1</sup>Reference is to the **Thema Mundi** where Aries is on the MC and Cancer on the the Ascendant (VRS Book 1, p8)

**Zones:** The following zones are subject to Aries:

- to the front parts, Babylon;
- to the head, Elymais;
- to the rightside, Persis;
- to the left, Palestine and the neighboring areas;
- to the turn of its head, Babylonia;
- to its breast, Armenia;
- to its shoulders, Thrace;
- to its belly, Cappadocia, Susa, the Red Sea and the Dead Sea;
- to its hind parts, Egypt and the Indian Ocean.

### *[Taurus]*

Taurus is feminine, solid, lying in the sun's spring tropic, full of bones, with some limbs missing, rising backwards, setting straight down.

Taurus ♂

**Climate:** This sign lies for the most part in the invisible sky. It is calm. From its first degree to 6° (the section of the Pleiades) it is worthless, even destructive, disease-producing, thundering, causing earthquakes and lightning flashes. The next two degrees are fiery and smokey. The right part (toward Auriga) is temperate and cool. The left parts are worthless and changeable, sometimes chilling, at other times heating. The head (to 23°) is in a temperate atmosphere, but it causes disease and death for living things. The rest is destructive, worthless, disease-ridden.

**Fixed Stars:** It has 27 stars. /7K/

**Paranatellonta:** The constellations that rise with it are (in the north) the rear of Auriga and (in the south) the rear of Cetus and the first section of Eridanus. Venus, the moon, Ceres, <Vesta,> Mars, and Mercury. The constellations that set <when Taurus is rising> are (in the north) Bootes up to the belt and the leg of Ophiouchus up to the knees. In the south Orion rises with Taurus; he is belted around the waist, extends his sword in his right hand, /7P/ and holds in his left hand the so-called caduceus.

This sign is productive of order, earthy, rustic, related to farming, a freedman, downward-trending, with few offspring, semi-vocal and mute, noble, invariable, energetic, unfinished, indicative of estates and possessions.

The ecliptic lies to the north, rising in line with its <Taurus'> highest point. Men born under this sign are noble, energetic, toilsome, good at keeping things, pleasure-loving, music-loving, generous. Some are laborers, propagators, planters.

If benefics incline toward this place or if the houseruler is favorably situated, men become priests and school superintendants, as well as those judged worthy of crowns and of the purple, of monuments and statues; also supervisors of temples and distinguished and brilliant individuals.

**Zones:** The following zones are subject to Taurus:

- to its head, Media and the adjoining areas;
- <to its breast, Babylon;
- to the right side toward Auriga, Scythia;>
- to the Pleiades, Cyprus;
- to the left side, Arabia and the surrounding areas;

- to its shoulders, Persis and the Caucasus mountains;
- to its truncated portion, <Sarmatia>;
- to its loin, Africa;
- to its torso, Elymais;
- to its horns, Carthage;
- to its midparts, Armenia, India, Germany.

### *[Gemini]*

Gemini is male, bicorporeal, articulate, the house of Mercury, upward-trending, celestial, feminizing, a freedman, sterile, public.

Gemini II

Under it are born scholars, those working in education and letters, poets, music lovers, declaimers, stewards, those who receive trusts; also translators, merchants, judges of good and evil, sensible people, practitioners of the curious arts, and seekers after mystic lore.

In general, whatever the houseruler usually produces according to its own nature, whether good or bad, greater or lesser, this it produces in each of the signs according to the operative or inoperative /**8K**/ configuration of the houseruler. (I mention this so that we will not seem to be constantly writing the same thing.)

DELINEATION  
NOTE

**Climate:** This sign is calm. Its first 3° are worthless and destructive; from 3° to 7° it is well-watered; good weather from 7° to 15°. The southern parts are well-watered. The last degrees are a combination of traits.

**Fixed Stars:** It has 21 stars.

**Paranatellonta:** It lies toward the west wind. According to the Sphaerica, /8P/ the tail of Cetus lies touching Gemini at one of its southern points; also at its southern point, on the due-south line, is the Satyr <=Orion> touching it with its club, and it rises after the north part of Satyr, where the spear is. Lyra lies to the south; it lies on the due-south line, being midway between north and south. Under Gemini's feet on the due-south line (in the hemisphere visible to us) is the so-called Canis in front of its right foot; Canis is cut by a line running from the south pole through Gemini's head straight to the north pole. Gemini rises with the rest of Eridanus and Orion in the south. The gods Apollo, Hercules, Vulcan, Juno, Saturn are associated with it. To the north, Bootes, Ophiouchus (except the head), and half of the Crown set <when Gemini rises>.

**Zones:** The following zones are subject to Gemini:

- to the front part, India and the adjoining areas and Celtica;
- to the breast, Cilicia, Galatia, Thrace, and Boeotia;
- to the midparts, Egypt, Libya, Rome, Arabia, Syria.

---

*[Cancer]*

**Climate:** Cancer is calm. The parts are as follows: under the two initial stars to the southeast, it is worthless, destructive, stifling, productive of earthquakes. From that point to 10° it makes the air damp and hot, having heavy rains and constant thunderstorms. The right parts are worthless and destructive.

Cancer ☊

**Paranatellonta:** In the north the Hare, the front part of Canis Major, and Procyon rise with Cancer. It has 4 stars. Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, <Neptune>, Venus. To the north, the head of Bootes sets as Cancer rises, as well as Hercules, Aquila, and half of the Crown.

It is the house of the moon, feminine, solstitial, the Ascendant to the universe<sup>1</sup>, slavish, downward trending, mute, watery, noble, /9K/ changeable, public, popular, civic, prolific, amphibious.

Men born under this sign are ambitious, popular, constantly changing, theatrical, cheerful, easily downcast, pleasure loving, party-giving, public.

Unsteady of mind, they say one thing but think another, and not sticking to one activity or (at the most) two, they become wanderers and travelers.

**Zones:** The following zones are subject to Cancer:

- to the front, Bactria; /9P/
- to the left, Zakynthus and Acarnania;
- to the back, Ethiopia and Schina;
- under the head are the Crimean Gulf and the tribes surrounding it, the Red Sea, the Caspian Sea, the Hellespont, the Libyan Sea, Britain, and Thule.
- Under the feet are Armenia, Cappadocia, Rhodes, Kos.
- Under the tip of Cancer (i.e. at the mouth) are Troglodytia, <Lydia>, Ionia, and the Hellespont.

---

<sup>1</sup>In the *Thema Mundi*.

*[Leo]*

Leo is masculine, the house of the sun, free, fiery, temperate, intellectual, kingly, stable, noble, upward-trending, changeable, solid, governing, civic, imperious, irascible.

Leo ♌

Men born under this sign are distinguished, noble, steady, just, haters of evil, independent, haters of flattery, beneficent, inflated with their lofty thoughts.

If the houseruler is at an angle or in aspect with benefics, then brilliant, glorious individuals are born, tyrants and kings.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

**Climate:** Leo is hot: the bright star in its breast <Regulus> is fiery and stifling. The parts are as follows: to 20° it is stifling, causing diseases of animals in the zones and places subject to it. The right side is moveable, fiery; the south part is wet; the lower parts are destructive to everything; the middle and the left are temperate.

**Fixed Stars:** Leo has ... stars.

**Paranatellonta:** According to the Sphaerica, in the north the left arm of Bootes rises with Leo; in the south the prow of Argo, the rest of the Dog, and Hydra, whose tail stretches to the claws of Scorpio <=Libra> and its head to the claws of Cancer as far as the Crater. Above Leo lies the Little Bear, and on line with it lies the head of Draco, /10K/ which Ophiouchus touches. On the north are the Dolphin, Lyra, Zeugma, Cygnus (except for the bright star in its tail) and the head of Pegasus.

**Zones:** The following zones are subject to Leo:

- to the head, Gaul and the adjoining areas;
- to the fore parts, Bithynia;
- to the right side, Macedonia and the neighboring areas;

- to the left side, Propontus;
- to the feet, Galatia;
- to the belly, Gaul;
- to the shoulders, Thrace;
- to the flanks, Phoenicia, the Adriatic, and Lybia;
- to the midparts, Phrygia and Syria;
- to the tail, Pessinus.

### [*Virgo*]

/10P/ Virgo is the house of Mercury, feminine, winged, anthropomorphic, luxurious, standing like the figure of Justice, bicorporeal, barren, a freedman, with no offspring, downward-trending, earthy, common, semi-vocal or mute, concerned with the body, incomplete, changeable, industrious, two-natured.

Virgo ♍

Men born under this sign are noble, modest, religious, burdened with care, leading a quite varied life, administrators of others' goods, trusted, good stewards, secretaries, accountants, actors, practitioners of curious arts and seekers after mystic lore, spendthrifts in their early years but prosperous later in life. . .

[<A later supplement from Ms Laurentianus 86.18><sup>1</sup>

**Climate:** As a whole Virgo is soaking wet and stormy. By part it is as follows: its first decan is hot and destructive, the second temperate, the third rainy. Its northern parts are windy, the southern temperate.

<sup>1</sup>Riley has this additional text from an alternate source as a footnote.



**Zones:** The following regions are subject to it: Mesopotamia, Babylonia, Greece, Achaea, Crete, the Cyclades, the Peloponnesus, Arcadia, Cyrene, Doris, Sicily, Persis.

Of the parts of the body it rules the belly and all the internal and hidden parts.]

---

### [*Libra*]

Libra is the house of Venus, masculine, equinoctial, anthropomorphic, upward-trending, airy, feminizing, vocal, noble, changeable, a diminisher of estates, the Lower Mid-heaven of the universe<sup>1</sup>, public, ecliptic, the supervisor of crops, vineyards, olive groves, aromatics, homesteads, measures, and artisans.

Libra ♎

Men born under this sign are noble and just, but malicious, covetous of others' goods, average in fortune, losing their original possessions and falling into vicissitudes, living through ups and downs of fortune, being in charge of measures, posts, and the grain supply...

[<A later supplement from Ms Laurentianus 86.18> <sup>2</sup>

**Climate:** As mentioned, as a whole Libra is tropic and changeable. By part it is as follows: its first and second decans are temperate, the third rainy. Its northern parts are windy, the southern moist/dry text? and disease-ridden.

**Zones:** The following regions are subject to it: Bactria, China, the Caspian area, Thebais, the Oasis, Troglodytia, Italy, Libya, Arabia, Egypt, Ethiopia,

---

<sup>1</sup>In the *Thema Mundi*.

<sup>2</sup>Riley has this additional text from an alternate source as a footnote.

Carthage, Smyrna, the Taurus mountains, Cilicia, Sinope  
*text?* .

Of the parts of the body, it rules the hips and buttocks,  
the groin and intestines, the hind parts and rump.]

---

**[Scorpio]**

Scorpio is the house of Mars, feminine, solid, rainy, fecund, destructive, downward-trending, mute, servile, unchangeable, the cause of stench, a destroyer of property, ecliptic, having many feet.

Scorpio ♏

Men born under this sign are tricky, base, thieves, murderers, traitors, incorrigible, destroyers of property, connivers, burglars, /11K/ perjurers, covetous of others' property, accomplices in murder, poisonings, and other crimes, haters of their own family...

[<A later supplement from Ms Laurentianus 86.18> <sup>1</sup>

---

**Climate:** As a whole, Scorpio is stormy and fiery. By part it is as follows: its first decan is cloudy, the second temperate, the third indicative of earthquakes. Its northern parts are burning hot, the southern dry/moist  
*text?*.

**Zones:** The following regions are subject to it: Metagonitis, Mauretania, Gaetulia, Syria, Commagene, Cappadocia, Italy, Carthage, Libya, Ammon, Sicily, Spain, Rome.

Of the parts of the body, it rules the unmentionable parts and the rump, the groin and seat.

Because of its sting, it causes blindness, dimming of vision, attacks of the stone, strangury, ruptures and stran-

---

<sup>1</sup>Riley has this additional text from an alternate source as a footnote.

gulated hernias, unmentionable vices and promiscuity, fistulas, cancers, and hemorrhages.]

---

### *[Sagittarius]*

Sagittarius is the house of Jupiter, masculine, fiery, upward-trending, vocal, moist because of the constellation Argo, noble, winged, changeable, bicorporeal, two-natured, mysterious, with few offspring, half-finished <=childless?>, governing, kingly.

Sagittarius ♐

Men born under this sign are noble, just, great-hearted, judges, generous, loving their brothers and their friends. They lose much of their original possessions but gain them back. They are superior to their enemies, seek a noble reputation, are benefactors, prominent, and act mysteriously...

[<A later supplement from Ms Laurentianus 86.18> <sup>1</sup>

**Climate:** As a whole, it is windy. By part, it is as follows: its first decan is quite wet, the second temperate, the third fiery. Its northern parts are windy, the southern moist and variable.

**Zones:** The following regions are subject to it: Etruria, Gaul, Spain, Arabia Felix, Cilicia, Crete, Sicily, Gaul, Italy, Spain, Cyprus, the Red Sea, Casperia and the nations along the Euphrates, Mesopotamia, Carthage, the Libyan Sea, the Adriatic, the Atlantic, the Triballi, Bactria, Egypt and the nearby places.

It is masculine and autumn.

Of the parts of the body, it rules the thighs and groin.

---

<sup>1</sup>Riley has this additional text from an alternate source as a footnote.

Because of its point, it often causes births with extra limbs, baldness, epilepsy, troubles of the eyes, or blindness. It always causes danger from animals, the loss of limbs, or dangers from wild beasts.]

---

### [*Capricorn*]

Capricorn is the house of Saturn, feminine, tropic, earthy, destructive, barren, downward-trending, chilling, mute, servile, the cause of troubles, brutal, lurking, mysterious, two-natured, moist, half-finished <=childless?>, a hunchback, lame, the Descendant of the universe<sup>1</sup>, indicative of misfortune and toil, a sculptor, a farmer. /11P/

Capricorn ♄

Men born under this sign are bad, warped. They pretend goodness and sincerity. They are toilsome, burdened with care, insomniac, fond of jokes, plotters of great deeds, prone to make unfortunate mistakes, fickle, criminal, lying, always criticizing, shameful.

**Climate:** Capricorn is temperate on both sides. By parts it is as follows: the first parts are destructive, the second moist, stormy, changeable; the middle parts are fiery; the last destructive.

**Fixed Stars:** It has . . . stars.

**Paranatellonta:** According to the Sphaerica, Casseiopeia and the right part of Pegasus rise with it in the north. In the south the rear of Centaurus and the legs of Hydra (up to the Crater) set <while Capricorn is rising>. These are the gods: Venus, the moon, Ceres, Mercury. On the north there is nothing.

**Zones:** The following zones are subject to Capricorn, all of them to the West and South:

---

<sup>1</sup>In the *Thema Mundi*.

- To the flanks, the Aegean Sea, the inhabitants of its coastline, and Corinth;
- to its waist, Sicyon;
- to its back, the Mediterranean;
- to its tail, Spain;
- to its head, the Tyrrhenian Sea;
- to its belly, mid-Egypt, Syria, <and Caria>.

### *[Aquarius]*

Aquarius is the celestial sign which is masculine, solid, anthropomorphic, somewhat damp, single. It is mute, quite cold, /12K/ free, upward-trending, feminizing, unchanging, base, with few offspring, the cause of troubles arising from athletic training, carrying burdens, or work in hard materials, an artisan, public.

Aquarius ♒

Men born under this sign are malicious, haters of their own families, incorrigible, self-willed, deceitful, tricky, concealing everything, misanthropic, godless, accusers, betrayers of reputations and the truth, envious, petty, occasionally generous (because of <this sign's> flow of water), uncontrollable.

**Climate:** As a whole this sign is wet. By part it is as follows: the first parts are wet, the upper parts fiery, the lower worthless and useless.

**Fixed Stars:** It has . . . stars.

**Paranatellonta:** According to the Sphaerica the right parts of Andromeda rise in the north with Aquarius, as well as the rest of Pegasus; in the south, the southern

one of the <two> Fish, except for the head. Juno, Hercules, Vulcan, Saturn. /12P/ In the north nothing sets. In the south the rest of Centaurus and of Hydra (up to Corvus) set <when Aquarius rises>.

This sign lies toward the west wind. In addition it faces toward the zone of Egypt and the surrounding cities, i.e. from Egypt's southern parts up to Pselchos, Dodecaschoinos, and Sykaminos; from its western parts to the oasis of Ammon and the surrounding cities; from its eastern part to the Red Sea which touches Egypt; and from its northern parts to Sebennytos and the Heracleotic mouth of the Nile.

According to the Sphaerica, Eridanus and the Great Fish lie next to Aquarius in the south, touching the tail of Capricorn. In the north, around the north pole, is the so-called Cygnus, above which is Sagitta, where the Bear (called Cynosura) looks to the north.

**Zones:** The following zones are subject to Aquarius:

- to the front parts, Syria;
- to the middle, the Euphrates and Tigris, Egypt, Libya, the interconnected Egyptian rivers, and the Indus.
- Under the middle of the Water Jug are the Tanais and the rest of the rivers which flow from the Hyperboreans to the north and west. /13K/

### [Pisces]

Pisces is the celestial sign which is feminine, moist, quite wet, bicorporeal, with many offspring, mossy, scaly, sinewy, humpbacked, leprous, two-formed, mute, motile,

Pisces ♋

with rough skin, in conflict with itself because one Fish is northern, the other southern. It is moist, downward-trending, servile, changeable, with many offspring, bicorporeal, sociable/lewd, with some limbs missing, the cause of wandering, varied.

Men born under this sign are unsteady, unreliable, changing from bad fortune to good, sexy, thievish, shameless, prolific, popular.

**Climate:** As a whole, Pisces is cool and breezy. By parts it is as follows: the first parts are temperate, the middle moist, the last destructive and worthless.

**Fixed Stars:** It has... stars.

**Paranatellonta:** In the north the rest of Andromeda rises with Pisces, as well as the rest of Perseus—the parts on the right—and Triangulum in Aries. In the south the head of the Southern Fish rises. Neptune<sup>1</sup>, /13P/ Mars, Mercury, Venus, Jupiter. In the south Ara and the rest of Hydra set <when Pisces is rising>; in the north, nothing. Pisces lies toward the north wind. It also lies toward the zone of the Red Sea, having not a few islands under its control, above which lie India and the so-called Indian Ocean. In its eastern parts Pisces touches Parthia, the land of the Indies, and the Eastern Ocean; in its northern parts, Scythia. In its western parts it washes with its waves Myosormos, Orthosormos, and the surrounding cities. According to the Sphaerica, Aquila, cut off by the north pole, and part of Sagitta lie to the north of Pisces, not far away from the north pole. The so-called Pegasus is within the Arctic pole. (The Arctic Circle, lying in the middle of the universe, stands apart from the other divisions <of the sky>. It has in it the Great Bear (called Cynosura) stretching from the north toward the east, and from the south the other Bear, called the

---

<sup>1</sup>The god, not the planet.

Lesser, /14K/ which rises at midnight, and which the so-called Bearguard <Bootes> controls, having a rein on both Bears. He is invisible depending on the elevation of the two Bears. One looks north, the other south.)

**Zones:** The following zones are subject to Pisces:

- to the front, the Euphrates and the Tigris;
- to the middle, Syria and the Red Sea, India, mid-Persis and the neighboring lands;
- to the tail, the Arabian Sea, the Red Sea, and the Borysthenes river;
- to the tie of the Northern Fish, Thrace;
- to that of the Southern Fish, Asia, Sardinia.



### 1.3 The 50 Terms

*[Note: Degrees are given following the modern method of signs running from 0° to 29°]*

#### *[Aries]*

♈

- ♈ [0-5] temperate, robust, prolific, beneficent
- ♀ [6-11] cheerful, clever, radiant, even /14P/ pure, handsome
- ♊ [12-19] changeable, clever, idle, windy, stormy, full of thunder and lightning
- ♂ [20-24] baneful, fiery, unsteady, characteristic of rash, wicked men
- ♋ [25-29] cold, barren, malicious, injured.

#### *[Taurus]*

♉

- ♀ [0-7] prolific, with many children, moist, downward-trending, convicted, hating their children <?>.
- ♊ [8-13] intelligent, sensible, criminal, with few offspring, sinister, fatal.
- ♈ [14-21] great-hearted, bold, lucky, ruling and beneficent, magnanimous, temperate, loving modesty
- ♋ [22-26] sterile, barren, a eunuch, a vagabond, censorious, theatrical, gloomy, toilsome
- ♂ [27-29] masculine, tyrannical, fiery, harsh, murderous, a looter of temples and a criminal—not an unknown one, rather destructive and short-lived /15K/

*[Gemini]*

## II

- ♀ [0-5] temperate, with fine weather, intelligent, versatile, skilled, active, poetic, prolific
- ♋ [6-11] competitive, temperate, with fine weather, prolific, luxuriant, beneficent
- ♀ [12-16] blossoming, artistic, addicted to plays and mimes, poetic, a contest winner, popular, cheerful, prolific
- ♂ [17-23] much-burdened, with no brothers, having few children, a wanderer, with a good income, destructive, bloody, inquisitive
- ♎ [24-29] temperate, a procurator, having possessions, intellectual, with a wide knowledge, distinguished, noted for intelligence, an arranger of great matters, most famous

*[Cancer]*

## ♋

- ♂ [0-6] hurling thunderbolts, moved in different directions, uneven, contradictory in his wishes, manic, prolific, poor, destructive, and in the end, base
- ♀ [7-12] prolific, censorious, moist, changeable, skilled, popular, promiscuous
- ♊ [13-18] precise, a robber, a leader in public matters, a tax gatherer, in the public eye, rich, wealth producing
- ♋ [19-25] kingly, imperious, glorious, judging, great-hearted, temperate, ruling, entirely noble
- ♎ [26-29] In this term everything is water, moist, poor in personal property, and in the end quite needy

*[Leo]*

♌

- ♌ [0-5] experienced, masculine, imperious and in general having leadership qualities, active, eminent, with no mean traits. /15P/
- ♍ [6-10] very temperate, yielding, talented, luxurious
- ♎ [11-17] having much experience, fearful, scientific, naturally clever, narrow, religious, with many children, searching out secret lore, barren, without offspring
- ♏ [18-23] addicted to plays and mimes, popular, scholastic, guiding, prescribing, intelligent. This term is barren and characteristic of long-lived men
- ♐ [24-29] very base and monstrous, destructive, injured, torpid, censured, unlucky

*[Virgo]*

♍

- ♍ [0-6] lofty, procuratorial, an arranger, handsome, organizing great affairs, most intelligent, entirely noble and eminent. This term is not, however, lucky in love. This misfortune is generally true of ♎, especially in this term and in that of ♍. This term causes men who are open to criticism; the term of ♍ causes those who err constantly. /16K/ They fall conspicuously short in regard to boys.
- ♎ [7-16] censured, wronging their marriage and falling into difficulty because of this, lucky in theatrical matters. They are most unnatural in their passions, especially when ♎ is in aspect; when ♏ is in aspect, they commit adultery; when ♌ is in aspect, they commit a great number of sins which are forgivable—but still there are condemnations. When the ☉ is in aspect, they commit hidden actions; when the ☿ is in aspect,

they meet with reverses and political opposition. If this term is beheld by malefics, it causes prostitution.

- ⌘ [17-20] agricultural, proper, reclusive but not ignorant. Men born under this term are trustees, fruitful, upright
- ♂ [21-27] masculine, harsh, public, demagogues, night prowlers, <hired men>, counterfeits, imposters. These degrees assault men and lead them to chains, mutilation, tortures, and imprisonment
- ⚡ [28-29] monstrous, chilled, destructive, short-lived, the term of deluded men

### *[Libra]*



- ⚡ [0-5] kingly, lofty, effective—especially for day births, but <disturbed> for night births. These degrees are also barren, moist, destructive
- ♀ [6-10][6-13]<sup>1</sup> businesslike, craftworking, marketing, the term of instruments of exchange and numbers, collecting; in general, just and intelligent
- ⌘ [11-18][14-20] wealth-producing, but despite that, this term is characteristic of unlucky men, cheerlessly hoarding their possessions, living without ostentation, with a sordid lifestyle, with no appreciation of beauty, censorious—and not, of course, blessed with children
- ♀ [19-25][21-27] loving beauty, loving crafts, craftsmen themselves, e.g. sculptors, painters, engravers. /16P/ In general this term is rhythmic, pious, mild and slow, fortunate, making progress without effort, exceedingly fortunate in marriage, and lucky in everything

---

<sup>1</sup>Degrees in red are the commonly cited Egyptian Term degrees.

- ♂ [26-29][28-29] ruling, leading, lucky in all martial affairs, optimistic/spirited, steady, successful, great-hearted; not, however, with many brothers or lucky with those he has

### [Scorpio]



- ♂ [0-6] easily upset and disturbed, unsteady, irascible, frank-speaking, arrogant, with few children but many brothers, uneven in fortune, inflamed, very appropriate for nativities which promise campaigns and travel abroad /17K/
- ♀ [7-10] lucky in marriage, pious, loved by everyone, loving children, wealthy, selected for every office, living graciously
- ♂ [11-18] military, competitive, prize winning, and, where words are concerned, bitter, contentious, not to be despised. These degrees are also prolific and fecund. In general they plan mischief, especially against those who attempt evil or do it.
- ♂ [19-23] talented, lucky, high-priestly, glorified in gold, purple, and the high offices appropriate to the inherent greatness of the nativity. This term is beneficent and as a whole loves men and gods
- ♂ [24-29] punitive, with few children or brothers, haters of their own relatives, poisoners, melancholic, and misogynists, having secret wounds, and in general very punitive and cursing fate. They are hated by both gods and men; they resist their superiors and are despised by their inferiors

### [Sagittarius]



- ♂ [0-11] active men. These degrees are damp but temperate, dabbling in all crafts and skills, prolific, with many children and brothers, yet poor

- ♀ [12-16] temperate, prominent, victorious, prizewinning, pious, honored both by the masses and by the rulers, blessed with children and brothers, living with many women
- ☿ [17-20] verbal, subtle, active, producing eternal verities, philosophical, and in general prominent in science and wisdom; fond of learning if ☿ inclines, but if ♂ inclines, loving weapons and tactics
- ♄ [21-25] sterile and baneful, cold, harmful, characteristic of base and completely unlucky men
- ♂ [26-29] hot, rash, violent, shameless, /17P/ destructive—except that this term is restless in all things.

All the terms in Sagittarius indicate varied possibilities in all matters.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

### [Capricorn]

♑

- ☿ [0-6] theatrical, comic, on the stage, lying, whoring, seducing, covetous of others' things, of no reputation, <talented> in everything, blessed, wealthy, but not of high rank
- ♄ [7-13] it brings vicissitudes of glory and infamy, wealth and poverty, largess /18K/ and public ridicule. This term is barren, having female or deformed children, of low rank, vulgar
- ♀ [14-21] profligate, lecherous, downward-trending, thoughtless, censured, having their ends very much in doubt, not dying well, nor steady in marriage
- ♄ [22-25] severe, cheerless, alien, unlucky with their children and brothers, bloody and destructive, cold, pitiless/stand-offish, malicious, slow to act, but tricky

- ♂ [26-29] lofty, prosperous, dictatorial, aiming at rule in everything, poor, destructive of their own relatives and of <brothers>, wandering, loving solitude, quarrelsome to the end

*[Aquarius]*



- ♀ [0-6] rich, miserly, gladly hoarding wealth up to the measure of the nativity, intelligent, learned in the law, precisely defining everything, imperious, petty, careworn, loving education and all disciplines, supervisory, overseeing, philanthropic
- ♀ [7-12] loving well, pious, wealthy without effort, profiting by sudden and unexpected good fortune, prosperous, seafaring. These are prolific degrees. It is beneficial for anyone born under these degrees to unite with old women, the feeble, or with eunuchs, and to gain advantage from the barren or the aged
- ♂ [13-19] lucky, petty, lurking at home, careless of his reputation, living in obscurity, fortunate in his children, misanthropic
- ♂ [20-24] diseased (particularly in the internal organs), troubled by lawsuits; this term is characteristic of wicked, intractable, and incapable men—except that these men readily attempt evil deeds
- ♂ [25-29] barren, moist, conceiving with difficulty, enfeebled, especially in the dura mater and the internal organs, afflicted with dropsy and fits, poor, with few brothers or children, envious, unlucky in their ends

*[Pisces]*



- ♀ [0-11] cheery, fecund, downward-trending, /18P/ luxurious, living graciously, with a friendly greeting,

celebrating, loving, making progress without effort,  
dear to the gods

- 𐌲 [12-15] literary, learned, preeminent among the  
masses and victorious over everyone because of his  
words, with many brothers, prolific, with many chil-  
dren, having too many associates and brothers
- 𐌶 [16-18] fecund, ruling, those of high rank, with many  
friends, bounteous, loving their parents, charitable,  
pious, temperate
- ♂ [19-27] active, naval warriors, /**19K**/ bold guides,  
attaining success in mystic lore, plundering but then  
restoring, varied, not dying a natural death
- 𐌢 [28-29] enfeebled, moist, subject to fits, entirely un-  
lucky

We have given instruction about what effect each de-  
gree produces. <We add that> if the houseruler is located  
in a given term, the houseruler will produce its proper ef-  
fect as well, whether good or bad. Now I will explain the  
Ascendant.

DELINEATION  
NOTE



## 1.4 Finding the Ascendant

Having determined accurately the ☉'s degree-position at the nativity, note where the dodekatemoron falls. The sign in trine to the left of this position will be the Ascendant, or the equivalent sign (i.e. either masculine or feminine), providing you take into account the distinction between night and day births. For example: let the ☉ be in ♊ 22°. The dodekatemoron of this point is in ♌; the sign in trine to the left is ♋. If the birth was in the day, either ♋ or ♎ or ♏ must be the Ascendant. If the birth was at night, one of the diametrically opposite signs <must be>. ♏ would be in the Ascendant in the first hour <of the night>.

Having determined accurately the degree-position of the ☉, for day births add to this position the rising time of the sign in which the ☉ is; then begin to count from the ☽'s position at the nativity, giving each sign one degree. The Ascendant will be <in the sign> where the count stops, or (as mentioned above) in the equivalent sign. For night births add the rising time of the ☽'s sign and count from the ☉'s position at the nativity. Using the previous example again: the ☉ in ♊ <22°>, the ☽ in ♌. I add the rising time <of ♌>, 37, to 22° <the ☉'s position>, for a result of 59. I count this off from the ☉ and stop at ♏. The Ascendant is there.

/19P/ Find the number <of days> from Thoth to the day of birth; multiply the hour/time <of birth> by 15 and add the result to the first number. For day births count from ♏, giving 30 to each sign. For night births, count from ♋. Alternatively, multiply the hour/time <of birth> by 15 [and add the degree-position of the ☉]. Then for day births, count from the ☉ with reference to the rising time <of the sign> in the klima of birth; for night births, count from the the point opposite the ☉ with reference to the rising time. In this way, the mystical,

compelling Ascendant will be found.

For day births /20K/ the point of conception will be trine or sextile to the Sun and in the Ascendant; for night births the signs in opposition <to these places> will be the point of conception. As a result, for whatever hour you observe, night or day, you will find the Ascending sign.

To find the Ascendant precisely to the degree, do this: multiply the hour/time of birth by the motion of the ☾. For day births count from the ☉'s degree-position; for night births count from the point in opposition <to the ☉>. The degree where the count stops will be considered the Ascendant. For example: Hadrian year 4, Mechir 13, the first hour of the night. The ☉ was in ♊ 22°, the ☾ is ♍ 7°, the motion of the moon in its <204th> day from epoch was 13;52°. I consulted the appended table under 14 in the first row and I found below in the first column of hours, 16. I then counted from the degree in opposition to the ☉, ♏ 22°. I stopped in ♏ 8°. If more or fewer degrees are found in the table of rising times, it can be ascertained from the aforementioned procedure whether the hour requires an added or a subtracted factor.

For those born during the day, add the remaining degrees in the ☉'s <sign> to the ☾'s degree position and divide by 30. The remainder will be the <degree in> the Ascendant. For those born at night: add the remaining degrees in the ☾'s <sign> to the ☉'s degree-position. If the resulting number is greater than the calculated hour/time <of birth>, the amount by which it exceeds either 30 or the number of the hour will be the Ascendant.

Count the days (including the intercalary days) from Epiphi 25 to the day of birth, and add 22 to this number. Count the result off by 30's, starting at ♄ for day births, at ♀ for night births. The Ascendant will be where the

count stops, and the degree thus determined will be the degree in the Ascendant.

### 1.5 The Gnomon of the Ascendant (5K)

Take the degree-position of the ☉ with reference to its “Ascending /20P/ time,” and multiply it by ten. /21K/ (Do this for day births; for night births take the point in opposition <to the ☉>.) Then multiply the result by the given hour/time <of birth>, whether day or night, whether given in whole hours or including fractions. Then divide by 360, and treat the remainder as the “gnomon of the Ascendant.”

For example: klima <2>, second hour of the day; ☉ in ♉ 21°, ♃ in ♊ 22°. The “Ascending time” of the ☉’s degree-position is 22;24. Multiply this by ten for a result of 224. This figure multiplied by two, then divided by 360°, gives 88. This is the gnomon of the Ascendant.

Another example: the ☉ in ♋ 19°. The birth was in the third hour of the night. The ♃’s motion was 12 17/30°. I enter the column of the table under the third hour, where I find at 12 of motion, 41 1/2, and at 13 of motion 44 1/2. The difference between 44 1/2 and 41 1/2 is 3, and 17/30° times 3 equals 1 7/10°. I add this figure to 41 1/2 because the ♃’s motion was 12 17/30°. All together the degrees total 43 1/5. Now add to this figure the ☉’s degree-position, 19°. The total is 62 1/5°. I count this off from ♉, since the birth was at night, and the Ascendant is in ♏ 2°12’. According to the table, the Ascendant was ♏ 3°.

For new-moon births, it will be necessary to look carefully at the term of the new moon and the ruler of the sign. Whichever of them controls the degree which just precedes the hour, that degree will be the Ascendant. For full-moon births, it will be necessary to determine the term of the full moon and the ruler of its sign.

For day births, it is necessary to take the ☉’s <degree-position> and the remaining degrees of the ♃ and to divide

by 30. Find the remainder in the table of rising times and multiply the figure entered there at the ☉'s sign by the degrees of the sign. Then, having added the ☉'s degree-position, divide by 30. Whatever is left will be the solar gnomon. We note this figure carefully and make it the lunar gnomon as follows. Double the ♄'s degree-position; divide by 30; multiply the remainder by 12 and add the /21P/ ♄'s degree-position. Then divide by 30 and the remainder will be /22K/ the lunar gnomon.

For night births, add the remaining degrees of the ♄ to the ☉'s degree-position, divide by 30 in the table of rising times. We add the remainder to the ☉'s sign and note the "horary magnitude." We multiply the sun's degree-position. We add the ☉'s degree-position and divide by 30. The remainder will be the solar gnomon. If the solar gnomon is greater than the lunar, then subtract from the Ascendant. If the lunar is greater, [then] add whatever the excess is. If they are equal, do not add or subtract. Likewise if the remainder is 15 or less, there will be addition or subtraction.

Having determined by sign the sign in the Ascendant, we will find the degree in this way: note the year of the quadrennium as it is given below. Add the hours entered there to the hour/time <of birth>. Calculate the ♄'s degree-position <for the new time>. We will consider the Ascendant to have that position.

First Year	1 Hour
Second Year	6 Hours
Third Year	12 Hours
Fourth Year	6 Hours

The year of the quadrennium is associated with the rising of the Dog Star <Sirius>:

The Quadrennium	
First Year	Sirius rises with Cancer in the first day hour
Second Year	It rises with Libra in the sixth day hour
Third Year	It rises with Capricorn in the twelfth day hour
Fourth Year	It rises with Aries in the sixth night hour

Calculated in this way, the Ascendant is useful in casting horoscopes in later years <after birth>, the hours from the quadrennium table being added (depending on the year in question), then counted from the hour of birth. Put the Ascendant in whichever hemisphere of the sky—day or night—the count ends, and interpret the nativity with respect the the stars which are occupying an angle at that time.

TECHNIQUE

## 1.6 The Midheaven (6K, 5P)

Midheaven <MC> can be handily found in this way: using the rising times for the <appropriate> klima, add the rising times from the Descendant to the point in opposition, then take half of the sum. Count this off from the Descendant. MC will be where the count stops. /22P/

For example: the Ascendant is  $\text{♋}$  15° in the second klima. I take the rising times from the /23K/ Descendant,  $\text{♎}$  15°, to  $\text{♋}$  15°; the total is 214. Half of this is 107. Adding to this the 15° of  $\text{♎}$ , I count from that same point. The count stops at  $\text{♌}$  2°, which is MC. Similarly for the other <degree-positions>.

If you wish to know the length of the hours of the day, in all cases add the rising times from the ☉'s degree-position to the point in opposition. Take 1/15 of that and you will know the length of the hour.

For example: assume the previous Descendant,  $\text{♎}$  15°, is the ☉'s position. The rising times from there to the point in opposition total 214; 1/15 of 214 equals 14 [remainder 4] with 4/15 parts of an hour left over. Therefore the day in the klima of Syria, with the ☉ in  $\text{♎}$  15°, will be 14 4/15 hours.

If you want to know the length of the night, work out the calculation by adding the rising times from the point opposite the ☉ to <the ☉'s> position. Similarly with the rest of the signs.

### 1.7 The Rising Times of the Signs (7K, 6P)

How many hours each sign takes to rise can be figured from the rising times of each sign. For example:  $\Upsilon$  rises in 20 <equatorial times>; now an hour has 15 equatorial times. If you take 15 from 20, the result is 5, which is  $1/3$  of 15. Therefore  $\Upsilon$  will rise in  $1 \frac{1}{3}$  hour.

You can discover how long each degree takes to rise thus: double the rising time of each sign; multiply this by six—the result <for  $\Upsilon$ > is 240. The degree is 8 “months” <= $8/12$  of an equinoctial time>.

For each sign the amount its rising time is more or less <than another sign’s> can be found as follows:  $\Upsilon$  rises in 20;  $\Upsilon$  in 40, for a total of 60. The rising time of a sign plus the rising time of the sign in opposition will total 60. The hours of a sign plus the hours of the sign in opposition will total 4 hours. The “days” and “months” of each sign plus those of the sign in opposition will total two “years.” By however much one sign exceeds the half, by so much the sign in opposition will fall short, and vice-versa.

So—in the previous example—subtract the lesser /23P/ from the greater, 20 from 40; the remainder is 20. One-fifth of this is 4, so the addition/subtraction factor for each sign is 4. If to the 20 of  $\Upsilon$  we add 4, the result is 24. In this time /24K/  $\Upsilon$  will rise. Then  $\Pi$  in 28,  $\Phi$  in 32,  $\Omega$  in 36,  $\mathbb{M}$  in 40,  $\Upsilon$  in 40. From  $\mathbb{M}$  to  $\mathbb{K}$  subtract in the same manner. By investigating in this way, you will find <the rising times> for each klima.

Another method: assume  $\Omega$  rises in 36; the same for  $\mathbb{M}$ , but  $\Upsilon$  and  $\approx$  in 24. <When subtracted> the result is 12, of which the third part is 4. This is the addition/subtraction factor. And so by investigating in this way, you will find the rising times for each klima.

The difference between klimata and the progressive increase <of the rising times> are calculated as follows:



in the first klima the rising times from ♄ to ♈ total 210; 1/6 of this is 35. In this amount ♄ rises. Continuing with the procedure at hand, if you subtract the 25 of ♄ and take one third of the remainder, you will know the rising times of the signs.

Given that there are 7 klimata, in the seventh, from ♄ to ♈, the rising times total 234. If you subtract the 210 of the first klima from 234, 24 are left. One-sixth (since there are 6 klimata between) of this is 4. Thus 4 is the increase needed for each klima in the construction of the table of rising times. So in the first klima the rising time from ♄ to ♈ is 210. In the second klima, 214; in the third, 218; in the fourth, 222; in the fifth, 226; in the sixth, 230; in the seventh, 234.

### 1.8 Listening and Beholding Signs (8K, 7P)

Similarly the listening and the beholding signs (the sextile signs) must be calculated from their rising times as follows: ♄ beholds ♃; in the second klima the rising times of the six signs from ♄ <to Leo> total 160 and from ♃ to ♌ total 200. ♄ is less than ♃ and therefore listens to it. The rising times of the two groups total 360.

Likewise from ♈ to ♎ there are 212 and from ♎ to ♈ 212; therefore ♈ and ♎ are of equal rising time and listen to each other.

Again from ♎ to ♏ is 200, from ♎ to ♐ 160. They behold each other /24P/ and ♎ listens to ♎. From ♎ to ♈ is 212, and from ♌ to ♄ is 180...

From ♐ to ♑ is 148, and from ♑ to ♒ is 148. They listen to each other and are of equal rising times. Similarly for the rest <of the signs>.

Some astrologers consider the sympathy of the sextile signs to be as follows: they add the rising times of the two <sextile> signs /25K/ and divide the sum in half. Then they see if the intervening sign actually rises in that time. For example: ♐ 20 plus ♈ 28 totals 48, half of which is 24. ♑ actually does rise in that time. Therefore ♐ will have sympathy with ♈. Likewise ♑ with ♒, since their rising times total 56, half of which is 28. In this time ♈ actually does rise.

Likewise ♈ with ♎ and ♒ with ♎. ♎ however does not have sympathy with ♌ because their rising times total 78, half of which is 39—but Virgo actually rises in 40. Likewise for the rest of the signs.

### 1.9 A Handy Method for New and Full Moons (9K, 8P)

To find new and full moons handily: take the distance from the ☉'s degree-position to the ☾'s, and determine how many dodekatemoria there are between. Count this amount off from the ☉'s degree position and you will find the new moon there. The ☾ will be as many degrees from conjunction as there are dodekatemoria which have been determined.

For full-moon nativities, take the distance from the point opposite the ☉ to the ☾, and determine how many dodekatemoria there are <[in] this distance>. Subtract that amount from the position of the point opposite the ☉. The full moon will be there.

Also, if you add 15° to the degree-position of the full moon, you will find the position of the next new moon. If you add 15° to the position of the new moon, you will find the next full moon. For example: Mesore 2, the ☉ in ♏ 5°, the ☾ in ♎ 26°. The distance from the ☉ to the ☾ is 81°, which is very nearly 7 dodekatemoria. Therefore the moon is seven days past the conjunction. Next I deduct the 7 from /25P/ the ☉'s position and arrive at ♎ 28°. The previous new moon occurred there. From Mesore 2 I subtract 7; the result is Epiphi 25. If we add 15 to ♎ 28° the result is ♏ 13°. The full moon will be at ♏ 13°. /26K/

Calculate the full moon as follows: assume Mechir 13, the ☉ in ♏ 22°, the ☾ in ♏ 7°. I take the distance from the point opposite the ☉, ♏ 22°, to the ☾'s position; this is 75°, which equals 6 dodekatemoria. I subtract this from ♏ 22°. The result is ♏ 16°, where the full moon occurred. Again I subtract the 6 dodekatemoria from Mechir 13, for a result of Mechir 7. Since from the conjunction to the full moon there are 15 days, I add the 8 <days from Mechir

7 to Mechir 13> to this 13, and get 21. Therefore the 𐤎  
is that many days <21> from new.

1.10    A Handy Method for the Seven Zone  
          System [or the Sabbatical Day] (10K, 9P)

For the week [and the Sabbatical day] proceed as follows: take the full years of the Augustan era and the leap years, and add to that sum the days from Thoth 1 to the birth date. Then subtract as many 7's as possible <=divide by 7>. Count the result off from the ☉'s day, and the birth date will belong to the star at which the count stops.

The order of the stars with respect to the days is ☉, ☽, ♂, ♄, ♀, ♃.

The arrangement of their spheres is ♃, ♄, ♂, ☉, ♀, ♄, ☽.

It is from this latter arrangement that the hours are named, and from the hours, the day of the next star in sequence. For example: Hadrian year 4, Mechir 13 (in the Alexandrian calendar), the first hour of the night. The full years of the Augustan era are 148, the leap years are 36, and from Thoth 1 to Mechir 13 are 163 days. The total is 347. I divide by 7 for a result of 49, remainder 4. Starting from the ☉'s day, the count <4> comes to ♄'s day. The first hour of that day belongs to ♄.

METHOD

Day Hours		Night Hours	
1	♄	1	☉
2	☽	2	♀
3	♃	3	♄
4	♄	4	☽
5	♂	5	♃
6	☉	6	♄
7	♀	7	♂
8	♄	8	☉
9	☽	9	♀

Day Hours		Night Hours	
10	℥	10	☿
11	♃	11	♃ <sup>1</sup>
12	♂	12	℥

The next day, Mechir 14, continues in this pattern: the first hour belongs to Jupiter.

---

<sup>1</sup>/26P/

### 1.11 The House Ruler of the Year (11K, 10P)

If you want to know the houseruler of the year, calculate in the same way. To continue with the previous example: the full years of the Augustan era are 148, the leap years are 36, plus the one day of Thoth 1, for a total of 185. I divide by 7 for a result of 26, remainder 3. Count this <3> from the ☉'s <day>. The year goes to ♂.

METHOD

Now that you have found the ruler of the year, you can find the ruler of the month as follows, applying the arrangement of the spheres in ascending order: Thoth <1> is ♂. Since Thoth 29 goes to ♂ again, the 30th is ♀'s. Phaophi 1 is ♄'s, Phaophi 30 is ♀'s, Athyr 1 is ♃'s, Choiak 1 is the ♃'s, Tybi <1> is ♀'s, and Mechir <1> is ♀'s. Since the ruler of the year is ♂, of the month, ♀, of the day, ♄, and of the hour, the ☉, it will be necessary to examine how these stars are situated at the nativity.

If they are in their proper places and proper sect, they indicate activity/occupation, especially when the ruler of the year happens to be transiting the current year, the ruler of the month transiting the current month, and the ruler of the day transiting the current day. If however they are unfavorably situated and have malefics in aspect, they indicate reversals and upsets.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

To me it seems more scientific to take the full years of the Augustan era plus the leap years (as was just stated), plus the days from Thoth 1 to the birth date, then to divide by 7 and count the remainder from the ☉'s <day>. Then consider that <day's star>, where the count stops, the ruler of the year. The first day of the month of each nativity will control the birth day. It does not seem reasonable for everyone born in the same year to have the same houseruler <=ruler of the year>. In general, the old astrologers took the ruler of the year and of the universal rotation from the first day of Thoth (where they

put the start of the new year), but it is more scientific to take it from the rising of Sirius./**27P**/



### 1.12 Masculine and Feminine Degrees (12K, 11P)

The masculine and feminine degrees are as follows: the first  $2\frac{1}{2}$  degrees of the masculine signs are masculine, /**28K**/ the next  $2\frac{1}{2}$  degrees are feminine. The first  $2\frac{1}{2}$  degrees of feminine signs are feminine, the next  $<2\frac{1}{2}\text{ degrees}>$  are masculine, the next  $<2\frac{1}{2}>$  are feminine.

The degree of the new moon will be indicative for new-moon births; the degree of the full moon will be indicative for full-moon births.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

Others say that the degree in which the Ascendant or the moon falls. . .

1.13 The Visibility Periods of the Moon (13K, 12P)

The visibility periods of the Moon are as follows: in its first day it appears  $\frac{4}{5}$  of an hour. In its second day it appears  $1\frac{3}{5}$  of an hour. Forecast the time <of its visibility> by multiplying the days <since new moon> by 4, then dividing by 5. For example: it is 15 days since new moon; 4 times this equals 60, of which  $\frac{1}{5}$  is 12; the Moon, being full, will be visible 12 hours.

Day	Visibility	Day	Visibility
1	$\frac{4}{5}$ hours	9	$7\frac{1}{5}$
2	$1\frac{3}{5}$	10	8
3	$2\frac{1}{4}$	11	$8\frac{4}{5}$
4	$3\frac{1}{5}$	12	< $9\frac{3}{5}$ >
5	4	13	< $10\frac{2}{5}$ >
6	$4\frac{4}{5}$	14	$11\frac{1}{5}$
7	$5\frac{3}{5}$	15	8
8	$5\frac{2}{5}$	16	similarly from <16 to 30>, as from 1 to 15, but subtracting

The month is  $29\frac{1}{2}$  days; the year  $354^1$  days.

---

<sup>1</sup>Schmidt has 359 days.

1.14 The Invisibility Period of the Moon (14K, 13P)

The Moon becomes invisible as it approaches conjunction with the Sun. The calculation of this in each sign is as follows: take one-half of the rising time of the sign in which the ☉ is located, and at that point the moon will be invisible. For example: the sun in ♊ in the second klima. The rising time of this sign is 20, half of which is 10. Subtract 10 from 30° <♊ 1° = ♋ 30°>. The ☾ will become invisible at ♋ 20°.

☉ in:	1/2 Rising Time	☾ Invisible in:
♈	12	♊ 18°
♊	14	♈ 16° /28P/
♌	16	♊ 14°
♋	18 /29K/	♌ 12°
♎	20	♋ 10°

Similarly for the rest of the signs.

### 1.15 The Third, Seventh, and Fortieth Days of the Moon (15K, 14P)

The third, seventh, and fortieth days of the Moon as follows: assume the ☾ is in ♍ 7°; the third day will be in ♎ 7°. [It is necessary to investigate the day in this way. ♎ 7° has become the third day.]

In the nativity chart the seventh will be found in square, at ♊ 7°. The fortieth will be at ♋ 7°. (Some add 160° to the Moon's position at birth and count off this amount from the Moon's sign. Others add to the Moon's position at birth <its positions> on the third and seventh and fortieth days, then after calculating, they interpret the Moon at those places.)

In general they note the fortunate, unfortunate, and average nativities according to the third, seventh, and fortieth days: if these locations are beheld by benefics in operative places, and not by malefics, then you can predict exceedingly great good fortune.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

If two of these locations are beheld by benefics and one by malefics, then you can predict average fortune.

If three are beheld by malefics, with the benefics turned away, then predict misfortune. If the situation is mixed, say "average."

### 1.16 A Handy Method for Finding the Ascending Node (16K,15P)

A handy method for finding the ascending node: take the full years of the Augustan era and multiply them by  $19 \frac{1}{3}$ . Add for each Egyptian month  $1^\circ 35'$  and for each day  $3'$ . Divide by  $360^\circ$  circles. Now count off the remainder <of the division> from  $\text{☿}$  in the direction of diurnal motion <=East to West>, /29P/ giving 30 to each sign. The ascending node will be where the count stops. For example: Hadrian year 4, /30K/ Phamenoth 19. The full years from Augustus are 148; this figure times  $19 \frac{1}{3}$  equals 2862. From Thoth to Phamenoth there are  $10^\circ$ , for a total of 2872. I divide this by  $360^\circ$  for a result of 7; a remainder of 352 is left. This remainder is counted in the direction of diurnal motion from  $\text{☿}$  and comes to  $\text{♌} 8^\circ$ . The desired ecliptic point will be there, the descending node at the point in opposition.

It will be necessary to examine if benefics are in aspect with these positions, especially with the ascending node. If so, the nativity will be prosperous and effective. Even if the nativity is found to be average or inclined toward diminution, the native will ascend and rise to a high rank. Malefics portend upsets and accusation.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

From the <tables of> lunar epochs and daily motions the ascending node and the sign of its latitude will be found as follows: for example, take the previous nativity, Hadrian year 4, Phamenoth 19. From the epoch to the nativity date is 204. Next to the epoch is entered 12;18 of latitude. Next to 204 is entered 11;37 of latitude. The total is 23;55. Multiply this times  $15^\circ$  and the result is  $358^\circ 45'$ . This is counted from  $\text{♌}$  in the direction of proper motion <=West to East> and comes to  $\text{☿} 28^\circ 45'$ .

17K.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>This appears to be the start of a new section in Kroll without

[Another more concise method: the 23;55 is counted from  $\mathfrak{Q}$ , 2 given to each sign. The count stops at  $\mathbf{\Pi}$ , having allotted 22, with 1;55 remaining. This I multiply by  $15^\circ$ , and the result is  $28^\circ 45'$  of  $\mathfrak{S}$ .)

Next in every case I take the degrees from  $\mathfrak{Y}$  to the previously determined degree; the distance is very nearly  $89^\circ$ . I subtract this amount from the  $\mathfrak{D}$ 's degree-position (which is  $\mathfrak{M}$ ,  $7^\circ$ ), and come to  $\mathfrak{Q}$   $8^\circ$ , the ascending node. It will be necessary to do the same calculation for the rest of the nativities.

If I wish to know the sign of the latitude, I will calculate as follows: the latitude entered next to the epoch is 12;18. I multiply only this by  $15^\circ$  and the result is  $184^\circ 30'$ . I count this off from  $\mathfrak{Q}$  and stop at  $\mathfrak{W}$   $4^\circ 30'$ . Next the "degrees of latitude" entered next to 204 is 11;37. I multiply this figure by  $15^\circ$ , and the result is  $174^\circ 15'$ . I add  $\mathfrak{W}$   $4^\circ 30'$  to this and count the sum off from the same place. The result is  $\mathfrak{S}$   $28^\circ 45'$ . /30P/ By using this method for the rest of the epochs we will find the sign of the latitude.]/31K/

### 1.18 The Determination of the Steps and the Winds of the Moon (18K, 16P)

We will find the step and wind as follows: from  $\mathfrak{Q}$  to  $\mathfrak{A}$  the Moon declines northwards; from  $\mathfrak{M}$  to  $\mathfrak{V}$  it declines southwards; from  $\mathfrak{W}$  to  $\mathfrak{T}$  it ascends southwards; and from  $\mathfrak{Y}$  to  $\mathfrak{E}$  it ascends northwards.

The steps are found as follows: since each step is  $15^\circ$ , and since a sign contains  $30^\circ$ , each sign comprises two steps. We can find the step of the latitude by starting at  $\mathfrak{Q}$ . Since the latitude in the previous nativity was found to be  $23;55$ , I count this off from  $\mathfrak{Q}$ , giving 2 to each sign. The count stops at  $\mathfrak{E}$   $1;55$  <step>. We now know that the Moon is ascending northwards at the sixth step of this wind.

### 1.19 A Hipparcheion Concerning the Calculation of the Sign of the Moon (19K,17P)

I handily find the sign of the Moon as follows: add the <correct> factor for the year in question from the table of kings below. Divide the factor by three, not discarding the remainder, but keeping it. If the remainder is one, add 10 to the number; if the remainder is 2, add 20; if the remainder is 3, add nothing—the number divides evenly.

Next take one-half of the months from Thoth until the birth date, and add the number of days <in the month of birth> to the first number. Divide by 30 (if possible) and count off the remainder from the ☉'s sign. If it was in the beginning <of the sign>, give 2 1/2 <to each sign>; if it is towards the end, give the appropriate amount. The Moon is wherever the count stops.

Use the same method to find the date of a given nativity: add the factor to the year in question and divide (as explained) by 3. Then add one-half of the months, note the number. Next estimate the distance from the sun to the moon /31P/ by assigning 2 1/2 <days> to each sign. Now determine which is the larger number. If <the number derived from> the distance from the ☉ to the ♃ is larger, /32K/ subtract from it the previously calculated number and the result will show the date. If the distance is less, add 30 to it, then subtract the previously calculated number. If the two numbers are both divisible by 30, the ♃ is in ♌ with the ☉.

For example: Hadrian year 3, Athyr 28. I add 2 (the customary factor for this king) to year 3, for a total of 5. I divide by 3, the remainder is 2; therefore I add 20, for a total of 25. One-half of the months <from Thoth to Athyr> is 1 1/2, plus the 28 <days in Athyr> make the total so far 54 1/2. I divide by 30, for an answer of



1, remainder 24 1/2. The ♄ will be this many days from conjunction with the ☉. This number I count off from the ☉'s position in ♈, giving 2 1/2 to each sign. The ♄ is in ♏ on the aforesaid day.

To find the date as follows: again to year 3 I add 2, then divide by 3, for a remainder of 2. Therefore I add 20, for a total of 25, then one-half of the months, 1 1/2, to get the total 26 1/2. Then I estimate the distance from the ☉ to the ♄ (i.e. from ♈ to ♏) to be 24 1/2 days. Since it is not possible to subtract 26 1/2, the previous total, from 24 1/2, I add 30 to it and get 54 1/2. Now from this I subtract 26 1/2, with 28 as the result. This indicates the date of birth. The customarily added factors for each king is appended, in chronological order as follows:

King	Years of	<Running Total>	Subtract	Remainder
Augustus 1	43	44	30	14
I add this figure [14] to Tiberius. The years of Tiberius are:				
Tiberius	22	[36]	[30]	[6]
for a total of 36 [22+14]. I subtract 30 with a remainder of 6:				
Gaius	4	10		10
Claudius	14	24	19	5
Nero	14	19		
The 19-year period is full. Since this period is operative, /32P/ we add (in order to complete 30) 11 years to Vespasian's reign:				
Vespasian	10	21	19	2 /33K/
Titus	3	5		5
Domitian	15	20	19	1
Nerva	1	2		2
Trajan	19	21	19	2
Hadrian	21	23	19	4

King	Years of	<Running Total>	Subtract	Remainder
Antoninus	23	27	19	8
Antoninus & Lucius Com- modus	32	40	30	10
Severus & Antoninus	25	35	30	5
Antoninus	4	9		9
Alexander	13	22	19	4
Maximianus	3	7		7
Gordianus	6			
Philip	6	The 19-year period is full.		

## 1.20 Reckoning the Sun and the Five Planets (20K,18P)

You will discover the Sun's degree-position as follows: in every case, to a birth date which falls in the months from Thoth to Phamenoth add  $8^\circ$ ; you will find the total to be the ☉'s position. To <birth dates in> Pharmouthi add  $7^\circ$ , to Pachon  $6^\circ$ , to Payni  $5^\circ$ , to Epiphi  $4^\circ$ , to Mesore  $3^\circ$ . For example: in Phaophi 6, I add  $8^\circ$ , total 14; the ☉ will be in ♌  $14^\circ$ . In Pachon 6, I add  $6^\circ$ , total 12. The ☉ will be at ♍  $12^\circ$ .

Since some students have become very enthusiastic about the derivation of numerical data, for them I must append the /33P/ handy methods for the rest of the stars, so that through such studies they may gain delightful and precise-to-the-degree methods. They can now make an examination of the more important procedures with the greatest enthusiasm.

Now then, Saturn is to be calculated as follows: take the full years since Augustus and divide by 30, if possible. Multiply the remainder <of the division> /34K/ by  $12^\circ$ . Multiply the result of the division by 30 (=the synodic period <of ♄>) by  $5^\circ$ . For each month from Thoth <to the date of birth> add  $1^\circ$ , and for each day 2'. Having totaled all this, count from ♄ in the direction of proper motion, giving  $30^\circ$  to each sign. The star will be where the count stops.

Jupiter as follows: divide the full years from Caesar by 12. Multiply the remainder by  $12^\circ$  and add this to the result of the previous division by 12 (=the synodic period <of ♃>). Total this, plus  $1^\circ$  for each month and 2' for each day. Having added, count the sum from ♃, giving 12 to each sign.

Mars as follows: take the number of years from Augustus to the year in question, divide by 30, and note

whether the remainder is odd or even. If it is even, start counting from ♃; if it is odd, start from ♄. Having found this number, double it and add to it 2 1/2 for each month <after Thoth>. If the result is more than 60, count off the amount over 60 from ♄ or ♃, giving 5 to each sign. Wherever the count stops, make note of the sign and examine which sign the ☉ is in. If the ☉ is found to be west of the star, the star will be behind <=to the west> its calculated position; if the ☉ is found to be east of the star, the star will be ahead <=to the east> of its calculated position. In other words, in each case, place the star nearer the ☉ than the sign in which you have calculated it to be. The rest of the stars, especially ♀, show the same peculiarity when they are moving near the mean position of the ☉.

Venus as follows: take the years from Augustus to the year in question and divide by 8. Examine the remainder (which will be less than 8) to see if Venus is at a point of maximum eastern elongation <during that year>. If it is, use this point and add the /34P/ number of days from that point to the day in question; if not, use the number right above it <in the table>, just as with the ☿. In other words, if the point of maximum eastern elongation is found to be before the nativity, use it; if it is after the nativity, use the number right above it. Add together the days, then subtract the elongation factor of the sign. Subtract 120° [for each sign<sup>1</sup>]. Count off the remaining degrees from the adjoining sign [from the sign of the elongation], giving each sign 25°. ♀ will be where the count stops. /35K/ The point of maximum eastern elongation will be clear from the remainders in the calculation of years above. If the remainders in our first calculation are 1, 3, 4, 6, or 7, then ♀ is at maximum eastern elongation <during that year>. If the remainders are 2 or 5, it is in motion <during that year>.

---

<sup>1</sup>[for the sign of the elongation] *marginal note*

<Remainder	Date	Sign of the Elongation>
1	Phamenoth 10	♄
<2	No maximum eastern elongation occurs in this year.>	
3	Phaophi 10	♅
4	Payni 22	♆
<5	No maximum eastern elongation occurs in this year.>	
6	Tybi 8	♇
7	Mesore 14 ♄	

In the eighth year ♄ has a point of maximum eastern elongation.

Mercury is calculated as follows: take the days from Thoth to the birth date and add to these in every case an additional 162. Find the total, and if the sum is more than 360, divide by 360 (a circle) and count the remainder off from ♄, giving 30 to each sign. The star is where the count stops. In every case make it very near the ☉. For example: if the ☉ was in the beginning of its sign, ♄ can be found at the end of the sign. If the ☉ is in the end of its sign, ♄ can be found in the next sign.

An example: Trajan year 13, Phamenoth 18. The full years from Augustus are 138. I divide by 30, for a result of 4, <remainder 18>. I multiply 5 times the 4 cycles, and the result is 20. I multiply the remainder <of the original division>, 18, by 12, and the result is 216. From Thoth to Phamenoth I count 1 for each month—total 7. All together this is 243. Now I count this sum off from ♄ giving 30 to each sign, and I arrive at ♄. ♄ is there.

Next I divide 138 by 12,for a result of 11, remainder 6. This <remainder> times 12 is 72. To each 12 which I divided <into 138> I assign 1, for a total of 11. Also to each month <from Thoth to Phamenoth I assign 1>, for a total of 7. The grand total is 90. I count this off

from  $\text{♄}$ , giving 12 to each sign. The count stops in  $\text{♈}$ .  $\text{♌}$  is there.

Next Mars as follows: from Caesar to the year in question /**35P**/ is 139 <! $\rangle$ . I divide this by 30, for a result of 4, remainder 11 <! $\rangle$ . (Since the remainder is odd, I know that I must start counting from  $\text{♌}$ .) I double this figure and get 22. For the months from Thoth to Phamenoth the total is 17 <= $\text{7 months} \diamond 2 \frac{1}{2}$ >. The grand total is 39. I count this sum off from Libra, giving 5 to each sign. I stop at  $\text{♄}$ .  $\text{♈}$  is there.

Venus as follows: I divide the 139 years by 8 and the remainder is 3. This indicates a point of maximum eastern elongation during that year on Phaophi 10 in  $\text{♈}$ . I add the rest of the days in Phaophi, 20, plus the days from Athyr to Mechir, 120, plus those in Phamenoth, 18, for a total of 158. I subtract 120 for the /**36K**/ maximum elongation and for  $\text{♈}$ . The result is 38, which I count from Capricorn, giving 25 to each sign. The count stops in  $\text{♎}$ .  $\text{♀}$  is there.

Since there seems to be great <difficulty> about calculating Venus in nativities, I will explain it with another example.

Hadrian year 4, Athyr 30: the years from Augustus are 148, which I divide by 8, giving a remainder 4. This indicates a point of maximum eastern elongation on Payni 22 in  $\text{♌}$ . Since this point is not applicable because of its being after the date of the nativity, I go to the one right above it <in the table>, in the third line, Phaophi 10 in  $\text{♈}$ . So I add the remaining 20 days of Phaophi, the days from Athyr to Messori, 300, and the 5 intercalary days. The total is 325 of the previous year, plus 90 days from Thoth <1> to Athyr 30 of the current year, for a grand total of 415. From this sum I subtract 120 for the maximum elongation and for  $\text{♈}$ , for a result of 295. I count this off from  $\text{♋}$ , giving 25 to each sign and stop at

♂ 20. The star is there.

Another example: Hadrian year 4, Mechir 13: the years from Augustus are 149, which I divide by 8, giving a remainder of 5. This indicates no point of maximum eastern elongation. I go to the point above, which is Payni 22 in Leo. I add the remaining 8 <days> in Payni, plus Epiphi and Mesori <60>, plus the 5 intercalary days. The total is 73. Then I add to this the days from Thoth <1> to Mechir 13, 163. The grand total is 236. From this sum I subtract 120 for the maximum elongation and for the sign ♌. The result is 116. I count this from ♍, giving 25 to each sign. The count stops at ♎ 16°. ♍ is there.

I calculate Mercury for the same nativity as follows: I add /36P/ the days from Thoth <1> to Mechir 13 for a total of 163; then I add 162 for a grand total of 325. I count this off from ♊, giving 30 to each sign and stop at ♋ 25°. ♋ is there.

## 1.21 Transits and The Combination of the Stars (21K,19P)

### [*Transits*]

[/21K/ The ☉: the second, the sixth, and the twelfth are good; the seventh and the fourth are rotten.

The ♃: the third, the eighth, and the ninth are rotten; the fifth, the eleventh, and the twelfth are good.

♄: the fourth and the tenth are rotten; the sixth, the eighth, and the twelfth are good.

♅: the third, the ninth, the tenth, and the eleventh are good; the fourth and the seventh are rotten.

♆: the third, the fourth, and the ninth are good; the /37K/ seventh and the tenth are rotten.

♇: the third, the seventh, and the eighth are good; the fifth is rotten.

♈: the second, the fifth, and the eleventh are rotten; the seventh, the eighth, and the ninth are good.

The other <numbers> of each star are variable in effect. If the stars are in the previously mentioned places in their transits, particularly when they hold the chronocratorship in operative places, with benefics or malefics in aspect, then they are bestowers of good or evil depending on whichever aspect prevails.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

If the <benefics and malefics> are together, a mixture of good and bad will ensue according to the quality of each person's nativity. Therefore it is always necessary to observe the places with respect to <the stars'> transits in order to evaluate the chronocratorships.]

METHOD

Let us append the associations and combinations of each star.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Mars is listed in combination under each planet but not on his own. His combinations with the ☉ and ♃ are missing from the text.



*[Saturn]*

When ♄ and ♋ are together, they are in agreement with each other, and they bring about benefits from legacies and adoptions, and they cause men to be masters of property consisting of land, to be guardians, managers of others' property, stewards, and tax gatherers.

♄ and ♂ are hostile, productive of reversals and ruin. They bring family quarrels, disharmony, and hatred, along with treachery, plots, malevolence, and trials. However, if these stars are not in their own or in operative signs, and if they have benefics in aspect, they produce distinguished and noble nativities, although unsteady in their happiness and prone to unexpected dangers and treachery.

/37P/♄ and ♁ are allies and productive of activities/employment. They do, however, bring slanders about religion, lawsuits, and debts, as well as disturbances about written matters and money. On the other hand, these stars make men who are not without resources and not unintelligent, with much experience and awareness, and who are curious, far-seeing scholars, seekers after mystic lore, revering the gods, but with much on their consciences.

♄ and ♀ act harmoniously with respect to activities/employment: /38K/ they promote success with respect to entanglements and marriage, agreeing and beneficial only for a time, not to the end. Indeed they cause abuse, divorces, inconstancy, and death, often entangling men with the base-born and the lowly, and causing them to fall into harm and lawsuits.

♄ and the ♃ are beneficial, productive of money, estates, ship ownership, and profits from the deceased, especially if the ♃ happens to be in the part of its orbit just following first visibility and has benefics in aspect.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

Then it causes association with the great, gifts, and the discomfiture of enemies. This combination, however, is unsteady with respect to possession, and with respect to women it is insecure and painful because of separations, hatred, and grief. It also produces bodily suffering, sudden fits, pains of the governing faculties and nerves, as well as the deaths of important figures.

♄ and the ☉ are at odds, giving and taking away possessions and friendships maliciously. Therefore those born under such a juncture suffer secret enmities and threats from great persons and are plotted against by some and live hated to the end. Playing their part well, they outlive most <of their enemies>. They are, however, not without resources, but are disturbed and long-suffering. They are self controlled in this onslaught of reversals.

---

### *[Jupiter]*

When ♄ and the ☉ are together, they produce noble and distinguished men, rulers, governors, dictators, vigorous men, honored and blessed by the crowd. These men are wealthy, rich, living with much spectacle. Sometimes however they are involved in uncertainties and /38P/ hostility. Especially if the star <♄> is found to be setting, they resort to greater showiness and make a pretense of the truth.

♄ and the ♃ are good, acquisitive: they cause men to be masters of adornments and slaves, and they bestow distinguished offices and ranks. They cause men to benefit from women and distinguished individuals, to be treated well by family and children, and to be thought worthy of gifts and honors. They make treasurers, men who lend much, who are trusted, and who find treasures and become wealthy.

/39K/𐤋 and ♂ make glorious and showy characters, friends of the great or of kings, distinguished governors and receivers of stipends, those making a career in public affairs or in campaigns, and those considered worthy of honor and status, but uncertain in their livelihoods and habits, tossing away their possessions.

𐤋 and ♀ are good, in harmony, productive of rank and profits, bringing new acquisitions, gifts, adornments, control over slaves, rulerships, the begetting of children, high priesthoods, preeminence among the masses, honors of garlands and gold crowns. These stars make men who are worthy of statues and images, but they also make them subject to ups and downs with respect to marriages and children.

𐤋 and ☿ are good, in harmony, and supervisory. They make men who are managers, overseers of affairs, in posts of trust and administration. They make men who are successful as secretaries and accountants and who are respected in education. These are approachable people with many friends, judged worthy of pay and stipends. If 𐤋 and ☿ are found in operative signs, they make men discoverers of treasures, or moneylenders who profit from cash deposits.

### [*Venus*]

♀ and the ☉ are in harmony, glorious, bestowers of good. They cause the association of male and female, they bring gifts and conveyances, and make men successful in their enterprises. Occasionally they make those men who take on popular leadership or trusts, those who are in charge of foreign/secure places, those thought worthy of stipends. These men, however, are not without grief with respect to wife and children, especially if Venus is setting.

/39P/♀ and the ☽ are good with respect to rank, acquisitions, and the inception of business, but they are unsteady with respect to living together, friendships, and marriage, bringing rivalry and hostility, as well as ill-treatment and upset from relatives and friends. Likewise with respect to children and slaves, these stars are not good: they cause possessions to be fleeting and bring mental anguish.

♀ and ♂ are at odds. They make men unsteady and weak of mind; they cause rivalry and murder; they cause men to have many friends, but to be blameworthy, shameless, fickle, and equally prone to intercourse with men or women; to be malicious, and plotters of murder by poison. These stars cause men to remain with neither the good nor the bad, to be slandered and reviled because of their friendships, to be spendthrift, /40K/ flitting from one occupation to another, to be eager for many things, to be wronged by women and because of them to suffer crises, upsets, and debts.

♀ and ☿ are in harmony. They make men sociable and gracious, gregarious and hedonistic, paying attention to education and sensibility, receiving honors and gifts. For those of mediocre fortune, these stars bring about the receiving of goods, selling, and exchanges, and they bring a base livelihood. These stars make men unsteady and fickle with respect to women, changeable in their agreements <with them>.

### *[Mercury]*

☿ and the ☼ make adaptable men with many friends, those flexible and self-controlled men who spend their careers in public places. These stars make pure, sensible men, men of good judgment, lovers of beauty, learned men, initiates into divine matters, beneficent, fond of

their associates, independent, braggarts. These men endure reversals nobly, but are ineffective, suffering ups and downs in their livelihoods, experiencing vicissitudes. They are not poverty-stricken, but find a success proportional to the basis of their nativities.

/40P/☿ and the ♃ are good with respect to the union and status of men and women, with respect to the power of speech and education, and concerning commerce and other enterprises. They make men who act in common, who are resourceful, experienced, inquisitive. They also cause men to advance by great expenditures, to be very changeable, not persevering in their activities or intentions for the future. <These men are> noble in the face of adversity, but are subject to ups and downs in their livelihood.

☿ and ♂ are not good. They cause hostility, lawsuits, reversals, malice, betrayals, wrongs from superiors or inferiors. These stars make some men athletic, martial, commanding, beneficent, inquisitive <of the occult>, getting a livelihood in a varied manner. They resort to forgery in order to embezzle, steal, and loot, and having fallen into debt and expenses, they bring on themselves infamy and hot pursuit. If the configuration is afflicted, men meet with accusations and imprisonment, and they suffer loss or confiscation of goods.

### *[Sun and Moon]*

The ☉ and the ♃ are good. They are productive of associations with the great and of high rank, as well as possession of estates, property, money, and adornment. These stars cause men to be successful in business enterprises /41K/ and to receive profit. If the basis <of the nativity> is found to be great, men become leaders of cities, in charge of affairs, preeminent among the masses,

gifted with a very high public image, munificent, governing, ruling, unsurpassed, and possessing a kingly property and spirit. Those starting with a moderate/average fortune become lucky and are called blessed. The good, however, does not last for this type of person, because of the waning configuration of the moon.

...

## 1.22 The Combination of Three Stars (22K,20P)

### *[Saturn in Combination]*

♄, ♅, and the ☾ are unsteady and insecure. <They bring failure> with respect to possessions, friendships, and other business enterprises. They cause loss of possessions, and they cause some to fall into invidious accusations. /41P/ These stars, having indicated help from unexpected sources or from legacies, and having increased someone's reputation, bring ruin and accusation, along with sudden danger and plots. They do cause preeminence, guardianship of others' business, tax gathering, and salaries, for the sake of which men endure disturbance and crises, but these stars make the basis <of the nativity> insecure and worrisome.

♄, ♅, and the ♃ are in harmony, bringing rank and profit, associations with the great, and gifts. Men travel abroad; they succeed in foreign lands or because of foreigners, not only in their own business, but also in others'. Men also derive benefits from women, and coming into possession /42K/ of estates and land, they become lords. Some become shipowners and thus increase their livelihood, or they manage their livelihood by getting hold of whatever is involved with water.

♄, ♅, and ♂ bring about mixtures of good things. They make some men famous, high priestly, governing, influential, in charge of the masses, of villages, or of military matters, commanding and obeyed. These men are not adorned with great show of wealth; they are involved in reversals, accusations, and violent affrays; and they lead worried lives. <These stars cause> others to be graced with the possession of an income, to be masters of estates and property, and to profit from the deceased, but their reputation is low. Therefore matters must be interpreted

according to the configuration of the heavenly bodies and the effects of the signs.

♄, ♋, and ♀ are good, helpful in occupations, bringing possessions. They cause associations of male and female, as well as friendships, advancement, and benefits from legacies. However in their associations men are slandered and envied; they are unsteady in their marriages, suffering embarrassments, hostility, and judgements. On the other hand, they are fond of their associates and easy to live with, enjoying many new friendships. They are not entirely tranquil, nor do they lack grief with respect to children and slaves.

♄, ♋, and ♀ when configured together produce vigorous men, /42P/ stewards, trustworthy, preeminent among the masses, commanding and obeyed, handlers of money and directors of documents and accounts. Such men have an independent and adaptable nature: sometimes they appear malevolent and wicked, and they will become covetous of others' property, thievish, and greedy, because of which they will endure upsets and crises, debts and public infamy. Sometimes these men advance because of their success in action and because of their trustworthiness. Then they gain support and are thought worthy of gifts from the great and of honors. Since they have a generous disposition, they will benefit their own family and even others'. They, however, will take part in the mysteries and in esoteric affairs, and in other respects they will inquire into the curious arts and be subtle, pretending that their character is straightforward.

/43K/♄, ♂, and the ☉ are indicative of forcible, outré, and dangerous matters. These stars make bold men, men of great ambition, wicked atheists, traitors, insubordinate, men who hate their own families, who abandon their own relatives to go with strangers. They are involved in contumely and dangers. They suffer falls from



high places or from animals. They are afraid of burns, and are toilsome in their activities. They do not guard what they already have, but desire others' goods. They profit from crime. If, however, the configuration happens to be military or athletic, they are toilsome, but not unsuccessful.

♄, ♂, and the ♃ cause men to be venturesome in their business enterprises and noble, but ineffective, meeting with reversals and violence. They become in turn violent, reclusive, wicked: they have a plundering and thievish disposition, and become defendants in trials. They experience detention and criminal charges, unless of course the nativity happens to be fond of wrestling or of weapons, in which case the "detention" configuration is fulfilled by the holds <of wrestling>. Some become injured or diseased and will suffer a violent end.

♄, ♂, and ♀ are favorable at the start of actions, friendships, associations. These stars bring profit, high rank, and political associations. Later, however, men are put into a disturbed state, liable to lawsuits arising from some envy/hatred and treachery. Because of this, such men make accusations and they endure hostility from men and women. /43P/ They are involved in shameful faults and adultery, and are the object of scandal and denunciation. Some are inclined to unnatural, bisexual vices, and they become accomplices or participants in crime or murder by poison. Then they suffer no ordinary anxiety.

♄, ♂, and ♄ cause crime, treachery, judgements, and alarms. Men go into debts and expenses for the sake of scriptures or mystic lore, and they suffer no ordinary tribulations and ruin. In other cases these stars make men keen and intelligent in business, leading a varied life, /44K/ maligned by some because of violent and illegal activities. Occasionally they become involved in toilsome and dangerous business and fall into poverty. Then they

blame their own Fortune, blaspheme the gods, and become oath breakers and atheists. If the stars are not in their proper domicile, they bring criminal charges and imprisonment. If the stars do happen to be in their proper, operative places, these men will undertake struggles of behalf of others and will generally prevail, or they will profit from documents, from accounts, or from public office, and will increase their livelihood.

♄, ♀, and the ☉ are indicative of lofty associations, honors, and deeds, and they are the cause of high rank, distinction, and preeminence among the masses. They are unstable with respect to property or other matters, and they involve men in ups and downs: they dissolve friendships, effect the reduction of livelihood, and bring public exposure or punishments arising from the betrayal of females or of religious matters. <They cause men to be> unstable and bisexual in their intercourse and other relationships.

♄, ♀, and the ♃ bring vicissitudes and instability of life, especially with respect to wife, mother, and children. They impose bad manners, ingratitude, as well as jealousy and quarrels, divorces, censure, public exposure, unnatural vices. But in business these men are not without resource, sharp, full of accomplishment, profiting from legacies. They do not however retain this wealth, since they are plotted against by many, and are themselves accomplices in crime and murder by poison, as well as seducers of women.

♄, ♀, and ☿ make intelligent, clever individuals, shrewd and designing in their business enterprises. These men, however, are unsteady and /44P/ frozen in their first enterprises. They become covetous of others' goods, accomplices in many crimes, seekers of curious lore, flexible, healing, enjoying newness, change, and travel. If, under these conditions, the configuration is afflicted, or

if ♂ is in aspect from the right, these men fall into disturbances and trials because of poisonings, of females, or because of legacies, or they suffer a loss of livelihood or an afflicting accusation after being wronged by women. In general they will be insecure and pained with respect to women, children, and slaves.<sup>1</sup>

---

*[Jupiter in Combination]*

♄, the ☉, and the ♃ cause distinguished, brilliant, prominent men, /45K/ supervisors of public, civic, and royal affairs, governors, generals, men without peer, dictators, as well as men who are envied, maligned, and betrayed by some, men who hate their own families, man who change their minds. These men are fickle and mentally unstable, arrogant, planning for their own advantage and falling into vicissitudes. They are adorned with all the pomp of wealth, but do not continue happy to the end; they falter in some things and ultimately come to grief.

♄, ♂, and the ☉ are indicative of men involved in disturbances and dangers, but enthusiastic and effective in their business enterprises. These men have a share of glory: they are leaders, governors, supervisors of public matters, but are prone to fall because the hatred of the great follows them, along with threats, betrayals, plots from their families, and criminal charges. A few, lifted from average fortune by the favor of the great, have later been ruined.

♄, ♂, and the ♃ produce shrewd men, bold, public men with many friends, men advancing to high place from humble fortune and thought worthy of trust. These men are governors, athletes, distinguished men, leaders,

---

<sup>1</sup>Combinations of ♄-♁-☉, ♄-♁-♃, and ♄-☉-♃ are missing from the text.

supervisors of the masses and of districts. They have a share of offices, stipends, or priesthoods. They fall into reversals and criminal charges, betrayed by their own relatives or by females, and they suffer loss of possessions. Later however they recover them because of religious or other unexpected affairs.

♂, ♀, and ♀ cause vigorous, enthusiastic, active men. They receive a salary for public office or military assignment or for doing royal or civic business. But they are unsteady in their /45P/ livelihood and spendthrift of their goods. They are however intelligent and trustworthy stewards, easily straightening out mistakes and laying on others the criticism originally directed at them. They are maligned and fall into reversals. These stars make some men athletes, prizewinners, and trainers, skilled at many things, fond of travelling and profiting in foreign lands, but failing with their own estates.

♂, ♀, and ♀ cause men to have many friends, to be easy to associate with, to be thought worthy of association with and help from the great, to be successful and to progress with the help of women. These stars make some men high-priests, prizewinners, athletes, or supervisors of temples or of downs. These men are blameworthy and indiscriminate about sexual matters, experiencing public exposure and betrayal, grieved with respect to children and slaves, enjoying new associations, and enduring separations from women.

♂, ♀, and the ☉ cause men to be easily successful in business enterprises and to have many friends, to be thought worthy of trusts, honors, stewardships, association with the great, and success. Some men advance from humble origins and are honored. But they let their possessions slip from their grasp; they are easily deceived, and they become poor for some time. They do many things for religious reasons. They are not without a livelihood,

but are supported by unexpected sources of high rank.

𠂇, 𠂈, and the 𠂉 make noble, propertied men, shrewd in business, collectors of gifts and sharers in trusts, religious men, intelligent, eloquent, guardians of property and deposits, making their careers amidst documents and accounts. They are lavish, tax-gatherers, stipend holders, with many friends, well-known, trustees, administrators of affairs, generous. These stars also make men athletes, prizewinners, worthy of honors, pictures, and statues. If these stars occur in operative places, they make men discoverers of treasures and overseers of shrines and temples. These men will rebuild, replant, and restore places, and will win eternal fame.

/46P/𠂇, 𠂈, and 𠂉 are good, bringing possession of livelihoods and success in business. Men become intelligent, straightforward, generous, sweet, loving their families, cheerful, participants in education and culture, pure, decent, worthy of honor and high rank, associated with the great, and sharing in trusts and stewardships. These men are honored with livelihoods. They foster the young and are fond of education. They are masters of slaves and they rear some and benefit them as if they were their own children. Since they are pious, they know the future from the gods, but they will become unsteady and grief-stricken with respect to wife and children.

/47K/𠂇, 𠂈, and the ☉ make men who are spectacular and glorious, but who are also petty, mentally unstable, and arrogant. Sometimes they are liberal and beneficent, though changeable. At other times they are exalted with the help of another person's fame and possessions, and although coming from humble origins, they become high-priests, prizewinners, leaders, governors, preeminent in public matters, and protectors of the masses. They are thought worthy of honors and gifts and are granted livelihoods. They will however become unnatural and blame-

worthy in sexual matters. If these stars happen to be rising or in operative places, then these men will be happy with their wives and children.

♄, ♀, and the ♃ cause vigorous, famous men, high-priests, prizewinners, overseers of temples and shrines, benefactors, men eager for fame, catering to the pleasures of the masses, of cities, or of villages. These men receive trusts and are thought worthy of honor. They are well spoken of and envied by family and friends, but experience hostility and opposition. With respect to wives and intimate friends, they are unsteady and quarrelsome, living with jealousy and separation and pain, always in suspense. Sometimes they are intimate with relatives, but not even then do they have an undisturbed home life. They get into partnerships. They will, however, become very spectacular in their manner of life, but they are full of false show, not of the truth.

---

### *[Venus in Combination]*

♀, the ☉, and the ♃ cause famous and vigorous men, those who live with ostentation, those who are malicious and blameworthy, slandered by most people and envied/hated by the great and by their friends. They succeed and gain possessions and are raised high by Fortune, but they are also unsteady /47P/ with respect to wife and children. Otherwise they are fond of their friends and travel much, finding good fortune in foreign lands.

♀, ♂, and the ♃ make men who are not without resources and not inactive, but who are also fickle and mentally unstable, quixotic, beginning in confusion and putting <no> end to their affairs. They have great plans, are contemptuous, wandering, bold, public, martial, indiscriminate in their use of male and female partners. They are maligned and fall into insulting treatment and

trials, changing friendship into enmity because of their criminal attempts, and failing in their livelihood.

---

*[Mercury in Combination]*

/48K/☿, the ☉, and the ♃ make revered and pure men, those who play their part well, stewards, and those who share honors and positions. They are benefactors, participants in the mysteries, troubleshooters, and they put on a great show of possessions. They become bodyguards, chamberlains, and men placed in charge of money, records, and accounts. The speech of such men will be most effective for advice or instruction.

☿, the ☉, and ♀ make polymaths and men of wide experience. These men are noble, prominent in the arts and sciences, worthy of trusts and positions. They easily regret what has been done, sometimes wavering and moved in all directions, or enjoying changes in their occupations. They have many friends, are well known, succeed through their acquaintance with the great, and are honored with a livelihood and high rank, despite being blameworthy.

☿, the ♃, and ♀ make good men, easy to live with, straightforward, generous, with a sense of humor, civic-minded, sharers in education and rhythm, ingenious, of wide experience, neat, pure, simple, participating in religious ceremonies, helpful, envied and hated, unstable in their livelihoods, and indiscriminate in their intercourse with men or women, wealthy, and thrifty.

☿, ♂, and ♀ when configured together bring profit, high rank, occupations. <These stars make men who are> shrewd in giving, receiving, and undertaking other business, who are stewards, wicked and widely experienced men, men who start their careers with documents and training. They are blameworthy, wasting much

wealth, generous, wallowing in loans and debts and defaulting, embezzlers of others' money, seducers, deceiving with their charm, wealthy, malignant—but repenting of what they have done.

---

*[Mars in Combination]*

/48P/♂, the ☉, and the ♃ make bold, manly, reckless, vigorous men. They become athletes and soldiers, rulers and governors, and they make their careers through violent, hateful deeds, in laborious crafts, or in work in hard materials. They fall into reverses and into dangerous situations, and suffer hostility and attacks from the great, but if benefics are in aspect, they maintain the basis <of their nativity> unimpaired.

♂, the ☉, and ♀ cause men to have many friends and to be well-known, /49K/ to be thought worthy of alliances and honors. These men have many resources, love their associates, but are criticized and gossiped about. Their friendships do not last and their accomplishments are fleeting. They desire much, they spend much, they are wrongers of women, and they are very ready to be insolent. They fall into reverses and hostility through their reckless decisions.

♂, the ☉, and ♄ make men of much experience, inventive in business enterprises. Although careworn and unsuccessful in the goal of their calculations, they prevail unexpectedly. Therefore such men are mentally unstable, reckless, active, hot-tempered; after rushing against their enemies and bringing charges of wrongdoing or damages against them, these men then change their minds. Occasionally they have a cowardly and despicable character. They control their emotions well, play a part, and yield to men whom they should not yield to. For the most part, they have a livelihood subject to ups and downs.



On coming into another's control, they curse their own Fortune.

♂, the ♃, and ♀ make men skillful and ingenious, easily aroused to action and very vigorous, wanting to act quickly, but being remiss, seekers of curious lore, initiates of the mysteries, and partakers of secret knowledge. They are oppressors, violent, insubordinate, covetous, falling into accusations and suits for damages, into trials and dangers, and they experience alarms because of documents and money. However, these stars do make men wealthy and lavish, although failing in their livelihood.

/49P/ This then is what we have explained with respect to the distinctive characteristics of individual stars as well as several taken together. If other stars share the configuration (being in conjunction or in aspect), the reading of the horoscope will be changed according to the nature of the additional star. However I did not want to continue writing at length about such additional factors, because the old astrologers have expounded them already.

The particular effects of the natural influence of each star and sign will be obvious at once to anyone who pays attention. (These have been explained previously in our treatise.) Therefore it will be necessary to determine how each star is configured in relation to the others:

DELINEATION  
NOTE

- is it at an angle or rising?
- Is it the ruler of a lot, of the Ascendant, or of a triangle?
- Likewise with the sign in which the star appears:
  - is it of its own or of another sect, and
  - which /50K/ other signs does it have in aspect?

If these things are determined, the predictions will be solidly based.

If <stars> fall in inoperative places, the <level of> occupation and of Fortune will be less.

1.23 Conception (23K,21P)

Having established all this, now we must speak about conception, putting aside complications and rejecting envy.

There are three factors: minimum, mean, maximum, and the difference between each factor is 15 days. If we add or subtract 15 to or from any factor, the next one will be reached.

The minimum factor is 258, which will apply when the Moon just follows the Descendant (in the Place just following the Descendant).

The mean factor is 273, which will apply when the Moon is in the Ascendant.

The maximum factor is 288, which applies when the Moon is in the Descendant.

If we measure the 15 days of difference in the celestial hemisphere from the Ascendant to the Descendant, we find that 2 1/2 fall to each sign. Let the Ascendant be ♈, the Descendant ♏:

☽'s Position	Gestation Period
Just following the Descendant	258
♊	260 1/2
♈	263
♊	265 1/2
♏	268
♊	270 1/2
♈(Ascendant)	273
♏	275 1/2
♊	278
/50P/ ♊	280 1/2
♏	283

☽'s Position	Gestation Period
♈	285 1/2
♊	288

For example: Nero year 8, Mesori 6/7, hour 11 <of the night>; the ☽ in ♈, the Ascendant in ♉. Since the ☽ is at an angle <IC>, the nativity will occur in 280 days 12 hours. We must subtract these days from the 365 days of the year. The result is 84 days 12 hours. Now if we add this 84 to Mesori 6, we come to Phaophi 27, the 23rd hour, which is the time of conception. In other words, if we go from Phaophi 27 to Mesori 6, the total is 280 days. We will now demonstrate this using many /51K/ methods, all leading straight to the answer.

Given the birth date, let us determine the time <from conception> to birth. If the ☽ is found to be in the hemisphere above the earth, calculate the degrees from the Descendant to the ☽'s degree-position and assign 2 1/2 to each 30° of arc. Then add this sum to the minimum factor (258), and you will find the conception to have been that many days previous. Count this amount back from the birth date, and you will find the date of the conception to be where the count stops.

If you want another method, calculate the degrees from the ☽'s degree-position to the Ascendant and assign 2 1/2 <days> to each 30°; then subtract this from the mean factor (273). The date of conception will have been that many days previous. Likewise if the ☽ is in the hemisphere below the earth, calculate the degrees from the Ascendant to the ☽, then assign 2 1/2 to each 30° division. Summing up, add this to the mean factor (273). The date of conception will have been that many days previous. Or, calculate the degrees from the ☽ to the Descendant and figure the total number of days by adding 2

1/2 for each 30° division and subtracting the result from 288. The date of conception will have been that many days previous.

For example, so that my readers may understand the determination: Hadrian year 4, Mechir 13/14, hour 1 of the night; the moon in ♍ 7°, the Ascendant in ♏ 7°. Since the ☽ is found to be in the hemisphere beneath the earth, I take the degrees from the Ascendant to the ☽; this is 60°. To each 30° I assign 2 1/2, for a result of 5 days. I add this to the mean factor (273), and the result is 278. The conception was that many days ago. /51P/ I count back <278> days from the hour of birth; the conception day is Pachon 11.

Alternatively, I subtract the 5 days of the distance <from the Ascendant to the ☽> from 92, for a result of 87. (The mean factor is 273, which leaves a remainder of 92 when subtracted from 365 days.) If we add 87 to Mechir 14 and count this off from the birth date, we come to Pachon 11. If you calculate the degrees from the ☽ to the Descendant, i.e. ♊ 7°, the total is 120°. Take 2 1/2 for each 30°, for a total of 10 days. Now if I subtract this from the maximum factor (288), the result is 278. If you count this amount back from the day of birth and calculate the ☽, you will find it to have been in the Ascendant at the delivery.

/52K/ If the ☽ is in the hemisphere above the earth, take the distance in degrees from it to the Ascendant, assign 2 1/2 to each 30° division, and find the total number of days. If you wish, add 92 to this and count off the sum from the birth date forwards; the date of conception will be where the count stops. Vice-versa, calculate from the date which you determined <to be the date of conception> forward to the date of birth, and you will know the number of days.

If the ☽ is in the hemisphere beneath the earth, you

will calculate from the Ascendant to the ☿: determining the distance in degrees, assign 2 1/2 days to each 30°. Subtract this from 92, and add the result to the birth date. Count from there forwards. That will be the date of conception. Count back from the birth date the amount which you added to the <mean> factor (273).

Another example: Trajan year 17, Mesori 2, hour 11 1/2; the sun in ♌ 5°, the ☿ in ♊ 26°, the Ascendant in ♉ 24°. Since the moon is in the hemisphere above the earth, I take the distance from it to the Ascendant, which is very nearly 96°. To each 30° I assign 2 1/2 for a result of 7 1/2 days. I add this to 92, and the sum is 99 1/2. /52P/ I count from the birth date forwards and arrive at Athyr 6. Vice-versa <I can count> from Athyr 6 to the birth date as done earlier; the total days are 266. The conception was that number of days previous. If I do not want to add the 7 to 92, I subtract it from 273, for a result of 266. I count this number back from the birth date. Calculating the ☿, I find it in ♉, in the Ascendant.

The Moon at the nativity will indicate in which sign the Ascendant of the conception was located. The Moon's degree-position at the nativity will also be the position of the Ascendant at the conception. Other astrologers calculate the Moon by doubling the degree-position of the nativity's Ascendant.

Alternatively they take one-fourth of the ☉'s degree-position at the birth and consider the /53K/ sign in trine to the right of that point to be the Ascendant of the conception. Therefore we will not go astray if we henceforth seek the answers for all nativities using the system given above. Let this be the divinely compelling manner of our future method for solving nativities.

### 1.24 Seven-Month Children (24K,22P)

We will append another method to determine if the infant spends a full term in the womb, or less—in which case premature death, miscarriages, difficult childbirths, and fatalities, as well as the birth of seven month children, will occur.

The determination is as follows: in each case I note the date (month, day) of the birth in the year prior to the nativity, and I calculate the **Д**. I note in which sign it is located. Next I note the date (month, day) of the birth in the year following the nativity (i.e. two years <later>), and again I calculate the **Д**. Having done so, I compare its position <then to its position> in the prior year. If I find in both years that the moons are trine with the **Д**'s position at the nativity, I forecast that the conception will be carried to term. If in both years the moons are square with the **Д** at the nativity, the native's gestation period will be the minimum factor, /53P/ 258 days. If the **Д** of the preceding year is trine and the **Д** of the following year is square, he will be 269 days in the womb. Conversely if the **Д** of the preceding year is square and the **Д** of the following year is trine, he will be in the womb the same 269 days.

If the **Д** of the preceding year is square and the **Д** of the following year is turned away, he will have an eight-month gestation period and will be stillborn. Likewise if <the **Д**> of the first year is trine and that of the second year is turned away, the infant will not survive. If in the two years the moons are found to be in no aspect with the **Д** at the nativity, the infant will be still-born or will be aborted with danger to the mother. If the moons of the two years are in opposition <to the **Д** of the nativity> and are in harmony, the infant will be of seven-month term. If /54K/ the **Д** of the preceding year is in opposition and the **Д** of the following year is trine (i.e. with the **Д**

at the nativity or with the Ascendant), the infant will be of seven-month term. The same will be true if the ☿ is square. If the ☿ of the preceding year is square and the ☿ of the following year is in opposition, the infant will be of seven-month term. The ☼ has the same effect when it is in opposition to the sign in which the new ☿ occurred.

The Ancients wrote about this topic, darkly and mysteriously. We have cast light on it.



In the previous treatise we set forth the introductory and educational material, as well as the forecasts for combinations of stars. <We were led to write this> not so much because of any literary rivalry, but as a consequence of our experiences. Now, continuing with our discussion, we will outline the general bases <of nativities> and the distinctions of the Places.

## 2.1 The Triangles [*Triplicities*]

When the zodiacal circle is subdivided according to similarities and differences, we find two sects, solar and lunar, day and night.

The Sun, being fiery, is most related to ♄, ♅, and ♁, and this triangle of the ☉ is called “of the day-sect” because it too is fiery by nature. The ☉ has attached ♄ and ♅ to this sect as his co-workers and guardians of the things which he accomplishes: ♄ as a reflection of the ☉ and as his successor to the kingship, a partisan of good, and the bestower of glory and life, ♅ on the other hand as a servant of evil and of downfall, and a depriver of years <of life>. Therefore the ☉ is the lord of this triangle for day births; for night births ♄ succeeds to the throne; ♅ works with both.

Fire  
♄-♅-♁

Next the Moon, being near the earth, is allotted the house rulership of ♀, ♁, and ♃, a triangle earthy in nature and the next in order. It has ♀ and ♁ as members of the same sect: ♀ (as is reasonable) acts as a benefactor and distributes glory and years; ♁ acts as the bane of nativities. Therefore for night births the ♁ has preeminence; in the second place is ♀; in the third is ♁. For day births ♀ will lead; the ♁ will operate second; ♁, third.

Earth  
♀-♁-♃

/55P/ Next is the airy triangle of  $\Pi$ ,  $\triangle$ , and  $\approx$ . For day births  $\mathfrak{h}$  will rule this;  $\mathfrak{f}$  will operate second;  $\mathfrak{L}$ , third. For night births  $\mathfrak{f}$  will lead;  $\mathfrak{h}$  will come second;  $\mathfrak{L}$ , third.

Air  
 $\Pi-\triangle-\approx$

In the same fashion, next is the moist triangle of  $\mathfrak{S}$ ,  $\mathfrak{M}$ , and  $\mathfrak{H}$ .  $\mathfrak{O}$  will have the house rulership for night births; in the second place is  $\mathfrak{F}$ ; in the third the  $\mathfrak{D}$ . For day births  $\mathfrak{F}$  will lead; after it comes  $\mathfrak{O}$ ; then the  $\mathfrak{D}$ .

Water  
 $\mathfrak{S}-\mathfrak{M}-\mathfrak{H}$

Note that Mercury is common and works with the two sects to a special degree to accentuate the good or the bad, and to accentuate the individual characteristics and configurations of each star.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

## 2.2 The Distinguishing Characteristics of the Triangles, the Houserulers, the Helpers, and the Sects of the Sun and the Moon—for Day or Night Births

An examination of the distinguishing characteristics of the previously mentioned triangles, along with the lofty or mediocre fortune of each person's nativity, will be indicative.

For day nativities, it will be necessary to examine the Sun: METHOD

1. in which triangle it lies;
2. its predominant houseruler and its helper, viz. whether it is at, following, or preceding an angle, rising or setting, and whether it is in its own signs;
3. which benefic or malefic it has in aspect.

Having determined all this, then make the prediction.

If <the houseruler> happens to be in the Ascendant or at MC or is in one of the operative signs, <astrologers> forecast a fortunate and illustrious nativity; if it follows an angle, a nativity of moderate fortune; if it precedes an angle, a base and unfortunate nativity. It is also necessary to see how the Sun itself is situated and which stars it has in aspect. For night nativities it will be necessary to inspect the Moon in a similar fashion and to determine how the predominant houseruler of the triangle and its assistant are configured, as was stated above.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

**/57K/** For nativities which are badly situated (whether day or night births), if the predominant houseruler is unfavorably located, but its successor is at an angle or otherwise configured **/56P/** well, the native will experience ups and downs during his early years until the

rising time of the sign or until the cyclical return of the chronocrator, but will afterwards be vigorous and effective—except for being unsteady and anxious.

If the preceding houseruler is favorably situated and the succeeding one unfavorably, the native will fulfill his promise well at first, but afterwards will be brought low, starting at the time of the rising of the sign in which the succeeding houseruler is unfavorably situated. (We will clarify in more detail the determination of the chronocrator at the appropriate time.)

If both houserulers are well situated, good fortune will be enduring and will be remarkable (unless some malefic is opposed or in superior aspect), and the nativity will not take a turn for the worse.

Whenever any star is a houseruler and just precedes an angle, it will be negative and a diminisher of fortune: it puts men in the power of others; it brings men into vicissitudes and reduces their rank; it afflicts them with injuries, diseases, and criminal charges, as well as poverty.

Now then, for those born during the day: if the Sun is found in ♃, ♌, or ♎, it is best for it to be at an angle. If it follows an angle, and if the stars of its sect are similarly situated, and if ♍ is not in opposition or in square, then <the ☉> will be considered to be indicative of good fortune. If the situation is reversed, the opposite will be the case.

If the Sun is found in ♈, ♍, or ♎ (for day births), it will be necessary to investigate first how ♀ is configured, second the ♃, and third ♍, and to see what stars they have in aspect. In the same way, if the ☉ is in the next triangle, ♊, ♋, or ♌ (for day births), it will be necessary to look at ♎, then ♏, then ♐. The same for the triangle ♉, ♊, and ♋: if the ☉ is there (for day births), it will be necessary to look at ♀, then ♍, then the ♃, to see if they are at angles. Having determined all this, then make the

prediction. For night births, it is necessary to look at the **D** in the same manner.

/58K/ It is best if the stars of the day sect are found at angles in their own triangles or in operative places; the same is true for the stars of the night sect. If they are in other triangles or in the opposite sect, prosperity will be less and will be /57P/ subject to anxiety.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

If the houserulers and their helpers are unfavorably situated, it will be necessary to examine the Lot of Fortune and its houseruler. If they are found to be at an angle or just following an angle, with benefics in aspect, then the native will have some good fortune and rank. He will be subject to vicissitudes and reversals on occasion, but he will not be totally at a loss. If even these <the Lot and its houseruler> are badly situated, affairs must be considered mediocre, even harsh: men will find it hard to succeed in their undertakings; they will be in need, poverty stricken; they will blaspheme the gods. If these places have malefics in aspect, men will be toilers, vagrants, captives, abject, wretched, disabled, and endangered. But if the Lot of Fortune and its houseruler have benefics in aspect—even though they themselves are unfavorably situated—men will get by on others' pity or be adopted by others, and they will lead a respectable life for some time, receiving a share of business, trusts, or gifts. They will not, however, continue their life without disturbance or without criticism.

⊗

It will be necessary to look at the aspects of every houseruler and the arrangement of the configurations, to see if they are appropriate or the reverse. If, for example, Saturn is found in opposition or in square for night births, it will bring about reversals, ruin, dangers, injuries, and diseases, as well as sluggishness in enterprises.

ASPECTS

For day births, Mars causes hot, reckless men, precarious in their activities and in their livelihoods. They ex-

perience imprisonment, trials, abuse, cuts, burns, bleeding, and accidents/falls. But if these stars happen to be configured properly, in their own sects, they are actively positive. As a result, these stars are not to be considered malefics in all cases; they can be bestowers of good. Particularly if Saturn (for day births) has a favorable relationship with the houseruler and has ♄ and the ☉ in aspect, it then makes men wealthy, famous, profiting from legacies, lords of estates and slaves, guardians and supervisors of others' affairs.

MALEFIC AS  
BENEFIC

For night births, however, if Saturn is /59K/ configured well and has a relationship with the houseruler, it will also cause the loss of what was gained, reduction in rank, and infamy.

Let the same considerations be true for Mars: for night births it grants leadership, generalship, public commands of the masses; for day births (if ♂ is in operative places), it brings about the previously /58P/ mentioned circumstances, but it then turns them into reversals, fears, and oppositions; it makes leadership subject to factionalism and terror. It brings attacks of enemies and uprisings of the mob, famines and plagues on cities, assaults, fires, dangerous crises.

In the same way the benefics will take on the character of malefics whenever they are situated badly as houserulers. If they happen to be at angles while their houseruler just precedes an angle, their ability to do good will be weakened.

BENEFIC AS  
MALEFIC

In any type <of forecast/nativity> it will be necessary to examine how the houseruler of the houseruler is situated and what stars it has in aspect. If the overall houseruler is unfavorably situated, but its ruler <=ruler of its sign> is configured well, then the native will have help and a basis of livelihood and rank proportional to the position of the star.

DISPOSITOR

### 2.3 The Lot of Fortune and its Houseruler

Since I want to make the topic of good fortune most secure and precise, I am moving on to the Lot of Fortune, the most influential and most potent place. Just as the King has mystically revealed in the beginning of his XI-IIth Book: “Next in order, it will be necessary (for day nativities) to count accurately the distance from the ☉ to the ♃, then to measure off in the opposite direction an equal distance from the Ascendant, and to inspect the resulting place: which star is its ruler and which star or stars are at this point and all the square or trine asterisms of this place. From this study/combination of the places, make a clear determination of the natives’ affairs.”

TECHNIQUE

/60K/ In his book, *The Terms*, Petosiris explains this place in the same way. Others treat this subject in other ways, ways which we will publish when necessary, along with other methods which clarify the topic of good fortune. Now we must speak about the matter at hand.

PETOSIRIS

## 2.4 The Star Which Holds the Ascendant or The Lot

If Saturn is allotted the hour<sup>1</sup> of the Lot <of Fortune> and is in the Ascendant, with ♂ not in opposition, the native will be fortunate in activities controlled by ♄. /59P/ If ♄ is in aspect, he will be doubly fortunate; if ♀ is in aspect, he will be fortunate through the help of women or eunuchs. If ♂ is in conjunction or in opposition, the native will suffer disturbance and reversals. If ☿ shares the Ascendant with ♄, the native will be handicapped in his hearing.

Jupiter, when allotted the hour or the Lot and in the Ascendant, causes men to be very fortunate from youth. If ♂ is in configuration (at the same center or in trine), men will advance by means of brilliant campaigns and will win the acquisition of a livelihood. If ♄ is also in aspect, men become exalted; if ♀ is in aspect, they become even more exalted. If ☿ is in aspect, men are involved in exchanges.

Mars, when allotted the hour or the Lot and in the Ascendant, urges men toward the military. If ♄ is in aspect, the native advances in status; if ♀ is, he attains an extraordinary status. If ☿ is in conjunction, he will accept a deposit given without witnesses, but will later deny it. If ♄ is in conjunction, he will acquire much property from many people, but after his death it will all revert to the royal treasury.

Venus, when allotted the hour or the Lot <and in the Ascendant>, indicates great good and makes men far-renowned. If ☿ is in conjunction, it makes musicians. But if, given the preceding configuration, ♄ is in opposition

---

<sup>1</sup>The delineations are meant to hold for *any planet* ruling the Ascendant (the “hour” marker), or the Lot of Fortune, or any planet physically located in the Ascendant (1st House).



to them or is in a superior aspect, it robs men of what they have.

Mercury, when allotted the hour or the Lot and in the Ascendant, makes men fortunate. If ♃ is in conjunction or square, men will have control of tribunals and cities. If ♄ is in conjunction as well, the control, honors, goods, and success will be double. /61K/

The Sun inheriting the hour or Fortune and in the Ascendant: if ♃ is in conjunction or square, the native will be fortunate. If ♄ is also in conjunction, he will succeed through his words. If ♂ is in conjunction or square along with ♃, the native will be great, a master of life and death. If, given the previous configuration, ♄ is square or in opposition, the native will fall into mishaps and penalties.

The Moon, when inheriting the hour or the Lot of Fortune <and in the Ascendant>, makes men great, especially when it is in its own triangle. If ♀ is in conjunction or square, the native will be thought worthy of great honor. If ♂ is also with the ☽, he will be master of life and death. If ♄ is, he will control many districts./60P/ If ♃ is in conjunction or square, they will be great kings. If none of the above is the case, and if ♄ is configured with the ☽, success will be from words and special aptitudes. If ♂ is also in conjunction or square, it makes tyrants and great lords. If ♂ is in opposition to the ☽, with no benefics in aspect, the child will be exposed; but if a benefic is in aspect, the exposed child will survive and be reared. Likewise if ♂ appears in square or is found in a superior aspect, it entangles the native in wanderings, separations, and vicissitudes. But if ♀ is in square at an angle, men will be wronged by women. If ♄ is in conjunction in a lewd sign, men will be pimps, and if ♂ is also in the configuration, then men will hire their wives out to others. If ♄ is square with the ☽ or is in exact

opposition (to the degree) to [ħ], the native will have an interruption of nurture and will be abandoned by his parents. If ☿ is square or in opposition to the ♃, men will be contrary-minded, always in opposition, involved in slanders and accusations from a superior. If, in addition, a malefic is in the aspect or in the configuration, it will bring discredit and condemnation. ♄ lying exactly opposite the ♃ causes sterility /62K/ and the opposition of superiors.

EXACT  
DEGREE

In general, malefics which behold the luminaries and the Ascendant with no benefics <in aspect> make men short-lived. If the ruler of the Ascendant lies in its proper place or in its own sect, it becomes the bestower of <long> lifespans. If it is configured with the lord of the Lot <of Fortune>, the native becomes full of years and luck. If the ruler happens to be setting, the native becomes short-lived. If a malefic is in conjunction or in superior aspect with the ♃, the infants will not survive.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

## 2.5 The [XII] Place of the Bad Daimon. Many Configurations

If the malefics happen to be in this place, they will cause great wounds and traumas, especially if they are in their proper face.

If the Lot of Fortune is present in this Place and some <star> rules it<sup>1</sup>, there will be no help, not even during transits. /**61P**/ They<sup>2</sup> have become enemies from the beginning, from the moment of birth. In the same, way benefics found in this Place will not bestow their benefits.

Whenever these three stars fall in this sign (the rulers of the Ascendant, of the Lot, and of Daimon), they make men unfortunate and disgraced, those lacking their daily bread. Many will hold out their hands <for alms>.

---

<sup>1</sup>VRS has “and some [malefic] should have authority over it”

<sup>2</sup>[*The Lot and its ruler? Or the ruler of the Lot and the ruler of the 12th?*]

## 2.6 The [XI] Place of the Good Daimon. Many Configurations. The Hearing and the Beholding Signs Must Also Be Investigated.

If the benefics are in the Sign of the Good Daimon, located in their proper places and in their proper faces, they make men illustrious and rich from youth—even more so if they are trine from the right with the Lot of Fortune or sextile with the Ascendant. If they are in an listening or beholding sign they provide even more and greater benefits.

If one of the benefics appears in opposition to the Good Daimon and its houseruler is also present, these stars bring bigger and better benefits and successes.

If malefics are in conjunction /63K/ with the Good Daimon, they cannot do any evil.

It is most efficacious if the houserulers of the Lot, the Ascendant, and the Good Daimon happen to be rising or if most stars are in conjunction or in aspect with these in operative signs; they then make men glorious and extremely wealthy.

<If Jupiter is in the Place of the Good Daimon, the native will be fortunate, possess a good income, and have many children. If it is also the ruler of the Lot of Fortune, the native will be rich and blessed. If ☿ is in conjunction with it, the native will be [an] imperial steward and will be happy in his children.><sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Prof. Riley: “The passage in brackets has been transposed from the end of chapter 8K;9P to its proper place here”

**2.7 [The X Place]—Midheaven**

Both benefics and malefics rejoice in this place if they have been assigned the Lot, the Ascendant, or Daimon.

If any of the <benefics> are in it when rising, or if they have contact with the ☿, tyrants and kin[g]s are born, governors of districts, men known by name in many places.

The ruler of this Place, if situated favorably, makes vigorous/successful men; if situated unfavorably, it makes feeble/unsuccessful men.

If <the ruler> is setting and a malefic is in conjunction or in opposition to this Place, it makes failures, as well as sterile or childless men./**62P**/

**The IX Place of the God Sun, just before MC.  
The Ninth Place from the Ascendant. It Has  
Many Configurations (7K,8P)**

If benefics happen to be in this Place and have been assigned the Ascendant or Fortune, the native will be blessed, reverent, a prophet of the great god; in fact he will be obeyed like a god.

If <benefics> are not there, and if Mercury alone is in aspect, the native will be involved in soothsaying; [he will] expound his craft to the masses<sup>1</sup>. He will become [a] royal clerk from his middle years. But if malefics are in conjunction and rule the previously mentioned places (the Ascendant and Fortune), or if they are in aspect from the right with the Lot, the native will be a tyrant: he will found some cities; he will sack others; he will pillage many people most wickedly.

If Daimon or Fortune happens to be in the <XII> Place of the Bad Daimon, but the houserulers of the Lot and of the Ascendant are in this Place <of the God>, the native will be involved in very many evils, in travel, and will lose whatever he has gained, or he will take refuge in temples because of his desires or pains. /64P/

---

<sup>1</sup>Prof. Riley: or "...the native will be involved in finance; he will control the masses through his business dealings." (Rhetorius in CCAG 8.4 pp. 163-4)

## 2.8 The VIII Place of Death. Various Views (8K,9P)

Benefics appearing in this place are ineffectual and weak, and they do not bestow their proper benefits. If in addition they rule the Ascendant and the Lot of Fortune, they are even more ineffectual and variable. If malefics are in conjunction and rule the Lot, the native is a vagrant, losing whatever he may have gained.

If the Lot falls in this Place and if malefics are in conjunction and are houserulers of the Lot, the native will be poor, unable to clothe himself. If <malefics> also rule the Ascendant, he will be abject his whole life. If the houseruler of the Lot or of the Ascendant is under the rays of the ☉, the native will stretch out his hands to beg.

If Mercury alone is in this Sign and is ruler of Intelligence (as Daimon is called), it makes fools, dullards, those handicapped in speech, illiterates. /63P/

If Fortune <is there>, the native, besides being dull, will also be stupid and poor, especially if <the Lot> is under the ☉'s rays. If under these circumstances malefics are also in conjunction, the native will be deaf and dumb. Only the Moon, when its light is waxing, seems to rejoice in this Place.

## 2.9 The [VII] Place of the Descendant (9K,10P)

Benefics in this Place and ruling the Ascendant or the Lot of Fortune indicate good things for the native: inheritances, sudden acquisition of other property, and benefits from a death. /65K/

If the benefics are not in their own places, men are less prosperous, but not poverty-stricken. If Mercury alone is in conjunction and in its proper face, the native will make gains in his old age and will be entrusted with cities and the affairs of kings.

If malefics are in this Place and rule the Lot or the Ascendant and are in their proper faces, the native's life will be subject to ups and downs, especially in old age, but he will not be in poverty. He will spend the income derived from calumny and wickedness/vituperation.

If malefics rule the Lots but are not in their proper face or in their own sect, the native will lead a wretched old age; a few will come into prisons for a time and into decrepitude and disease. If ♄ is in aspect from the right, men enter temple service because of sickness; they are troubled and suffer from hemorrhages and disease of the genitals or fingers.

If Mercury is with ♂ in the Setting Sign, men become accomplices in banditry and murder; as a result they perish miserably thereafter.

Malefics setting while out of their own signs cause suicides.

Benefics make men with much experience and those who are fortunate in old age.



## 2.10 The VI Place. The Place of Mars (10K,11P)

If benefics happen to be in this Place, the native will lose whatever he possesses; his property will not stay with him. /64P/ He will suffer loss because of fines when advanced in years.

If the Sun is in this Place and rules the Lot of Fortune or the Ascendant, it causes the native to be condemned by the highest authority.

If Saturn rules <these places>, the native will be a wanderer, prone to give offense, and he will flee his homeland, barely keeping himself alive.

If Jupiter rules the Lot or the Ascendant, the native will lose his property in civil suits.

If Venus rules, he will suffer trials and penalties because of a woman. Such men, being disagreeable, are insensible to love.

If Mars rules, it causes wounds and diseases /66K/ in the limb indicated by the sign <where Mars is>, and it makes naked beggars who come to a miserable end.

If Mercury rules the Lot or the Ascendant, it makes plotters, thieves, slanderers, and men who are reviled in public.

If the Moon is in this Place, the native will be a slave, helpless—unless the rest are in conjunction with the ☾: if the other stars are situated favorably, the native can be free and respectable, even though the ☾ is in <the VI Place of> Bad Fortune.

**2.11 The V Place. Many Theorems (11K,12P)**

If benefics hold the Ascendant or the Lot of Fortune, the native will be great, will lead the masses, and will make laws for them.

Venus will be especially gracious if it rules the Ascendant or the Lot. Especially if Venus is in its proper face or in its own place, it makes men wealthy and honored. The same if true for all the stars: if they govern the Ascendant or the Lot, they produce the good that is appropriate to their nature and to Good Fortune.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

If Mars happens to be situated as specified, men will be rulers of all sorts of places: governors, tyrants, and masters of life and death—not only over lesser men but also over men of high rank.

If Saturn is in this Place, men will be masters of estates, flocks, and herds; they will establish towns and villages.

If the Sun is in this Place, men will be friends of great lords, associates of kings, governors of temples.

If Mercury is in this Place men will be successful through words and worthy of much money.

If the Moon is configured well, holds the Lot or the Ascendant, and is in this Place along with its <the ☾'s> houseruler, the native will be long-lived, /65P/ growing old in prosperity.

The benefics help greatly while passing through this Place; the malefics cannot do harm. /67K/

DELINEATION  
NOTE

## **2.12 The IV Place—Lower Midheaven (12K,13P)**

If benefics rule the Ascendant or Fortune, and are in this Place, the native will make his living in temples.

If benefics are assigned the Archetypal Lot, and are houserulers at Lower Midheaven, the native will be given revelations by gods and through visions of ghostly shapes.

If Mars is here with them and is assigned Fortune and the Ascendant, the native will live a troubled life, disgraced, falling into difficulties, engaged in criminal activity with others, and suffering a violent/self-inflicted death.

It must be observed that this Place implies good repute after death and bequests to heirs. If malefics are in this Place, the native will bequeath his property to whomever he wishes.

### 2.13 The III Place. The Place of the Goddess Moon (13K,14P)

If the Moon is in this Place, is assigned the Ascendant or the Lot, and is in its proper face, the native will be great and a master of many good things. He will rule a city; he will give orders to many men; he will be obeyed; and he will be master of treasures.

If the Sun should also be in this Place with the ☽ when the ☽ is just past new, the native will be a priest or priestess of the great goddess and will have a unsurpassable livelihood.

If Saturn is here with the ☽, the native will be subject to God's wrath, will be punished, will often come into trials, and will blaspheme the gods many times because of what has happened to him.

If Jupiter is with the ☽, the native will be a prophet, fortunate, rich, famous, and will be master of many good things.

If Mars is in conjunction with the ☽, he will be successful, but wicked: he will embezzle deposits, will get his living through the murder or robbery of others, and will travel widely. If ♂ is appropriately situated in its own faces, the native will be a governor of towns and cities (depending on the character of the nativity), but he will also be unjust, a perjurer, and covetous of others' goods. He will perish suddenly because of the wrath of authority.  
/68K/

If Venus in her own places rules the <III> Place of the Goddess and the Lot of Fortune /66P/ (especially for night births), the native will be rich and well liked by women. Some will be royal governors, rulers of towns, because the goddess <Venus> has been assigned the Lot of Fortune in the House of the Goddess.

If Mercury is with the ♀ in the Sign of the Goddess and rules the Lot of Fortune or the Ascendant, the native will foretell everyone's future and will share in the mysteries of the gods.

### 2.14 The II Place, Called the Gate of Hades. The Place Rising After the Ascendant (14K,15P)

In this Place the benefics do no good, the malefics make men sluggish and injured, unable to wade through their lives to the end.

If the Lot is in this Place, and if malefics are the house-rulers of the Lot or the Ascendant, the native becomes a cemetery guard, living his life outside the city gates.

Saturn ruling the Lot of Fortune and in this Place makes dead-souled men, those weak in body and suffering chains/imprisonment for a long time, until the completion of the chronocratorship of the star.

Jupiter in this Place causes expenditure of the native's resources until the end so that nothing is left; it brings the gift of children, but not with good fortune.

Mars in this Place and houseruler of the Lot and of the Ascendant makes men who are prone to give offence, are subject to penalties, and whose actions are hindered. Some become captives, but are later freed. If ♂ (in its own degrees or signs) is in charge of the Lot of Fortune, when the Lot is in this <II> Place, men become jailers, making a livelihood in prisons or a living among the cells.

If the Sun is in this Place, and if it is houseruler of the Lot or the Ascendant, and in its own house, <with ♂ being in the Ascendant> or in the places of ♄, the native will lose his sight in the chronocratorship of ♂, will be plundered of his ancestral property, and will become a beggar.

If /69K/ Venus is in this Place and is houseruler of the Lot or the Ascendant, it will bring public, disreputable occupations if ♀ happens to be at its morning rising.

Mercury in this Place and located under the rays of the ☉ makes stupid, illiterate men. If it is also ruler of the Second Fortune (the one called Daimon), it makes men deaf and dumb. If it is rising, men engage in curious arts, attempting what they have not learned <from others>, /67P/ but still succeeding in their science.

If the Moon is in this Place with ♄ in the Ascendant, the opposite happens: the native will suffer from cataracts and glaucoma.

**2.15 Nine Names of the Places (15K,16P)**

<b>&lt;Name<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>Significance&gt;</b>
The God <IX>	the father <sup>2</sup>
The Goddess <III>	the mother <sup>3</sup>
The Good Daimon <XI>	children <sup>4</sup>
The Good Fortune<V>	marriage <sup>5</sup>
The Bad Daimon <XII>	diseases
The Bad Fortune <VI>	injuries
Fortune and Ascendant <I>	life and livelihood
Daimon	mental activity
Midheaven <X>=MC	action/occupation
Love	desire
Necessity	enemies

---

<sup>1</sup>No explicit mention of the 2nd, 4th, 7th, or 8th.

<sup>2</sup>usually assigned to the 4th

<sup>3</sup>usually assigned to the 10th

<sup>4</sup>usually assigned to the 5th

<sup>5</sup>usually assigned to the 7th



## 2.16 The Trine Influences of the Stars on Prosperity or Poverty. The Configurations of Trine, Sextile, and Opposition (16K,17P)

Jupiter trine with the Sun indicates great and glorious men. If the ☉ is in the Ascendant, the indication applies to the father and to the nativity. If it is at an angle, it applies to the father: it indicates that he is famous, but less so than under the previous configuration. It indicates nothing unusual for the nativity if no other factor improves the outlook.

♃Δ☉

If Saturn is trine with the Sun from the left and the ☉ is in the Ascendant, the rank will be higher: such men will own much land, have many estates, and become rich. If ♄ is also in aspect along with ♃, the configuration indicates tyrants; especially if the ☉ is in the Ascendant, such men will control many districts and armies. If ♃<sup>1</sup> is also in aspect, the native's father will be great, the leader of arms and armies (if indeed the rest of the aspects work /70K/ towards his greatness), but he will not be a tyrant, warlike, or ferocious.

♄♃Δ☉

If Mars is in opposition to the Sun, with ♃ and ♄ trine with the ☉ from the right, the native will lead the masses magnificently and with high rank.

♄♃☉

If Saturn is in opposition to the ☉ (under the stated conditions), the native will be opposed by family and friends, but he will prevail and subdue them.

If ♄ and ♃ are trine with the ☉, with ♃ in opposition in its own degrees or signs, the native is imperious and noble. If the configuration is sextile, the forecast is less <spectacular>.

♄♃Δ☉

---

<sup>1</sup>This doesn't make sense as ♄ is already Δ☉. Maybe he means if ♄ also aspects ♃ or ♃?

Venus sextile to the ☉ in the morning sky indicates that the father and the native will be charming and distinguished. /68P/ If ♀ is configured in Good Daimon or in Good Fortune, the native will be thought worthy (by women) of the purple and of golden ornaments.

♀✳☉

Saturn square with the ☉ and on the left harms the ancestral property while the native's father is still alive, especially when ♄ is in feminine signs or in opposing degrees. If ♄ is in opposition, the situation is much worse: the native will be overwhelmed by wounds and suffering, and will be betrayed by relatives and clients. If ♄ is on the right, the forecast will be worse. If it should be in the Ascendant or at MC, the reversals will be less.

♄☐☉

Mars square with the ☉ is bad for the father and the native. It brings injuries and suffering. ♂ in opposition or in afflicted signs or degrees causes injuries to the joints. If ♂ is square on the right in the tenth <sign from the ☉>, worse will happen: in addition to everything else, he will go insane.

♂☐☉

Jupiter square with the ☉ and in base degrees or signs becomes unpleasant: <this configuration> ruins the star's good influence and turns it to the opposite. But, ♃ in glorious degrees or signs, and especially at an angle, is productive of rank and wealth.

♃☐☉

Jupiter in opposition to the ☉ in most unpleasant: not only is all of Jupiter's good influence quenched, but the native will feel the anger of superiors and the hostility of the masses. The exact-to-the-degree positions of square and opposition are harsh.

♃♂☉

DELINEATION  
NOTE

For night nativities, Mars trine with the ☉, especially when in /71K/ feminine signs and on the right, indicates great and famous men, masters of life and death—provided that the rest of the aspects in the nativity agree. In addition, if ♄ is trine to the right, it makes great dynast[y]s, rulers of cities and leaders of the

♂♂☉

masses. If the nativity is female and ♀ is in conjunction, the native will be a queen and will have power over many districts; she will become a benefactor and be unsurpassed. For male or female nativities, if the one star occupies its proper place and the other happens to be in its own triangle, there is no opposition: they become king of kings, provided the one <star> is houseruler and the other is cohouseruler and master of the nativity, and that they both rule the Lot of Fortune and the Ascendant. If they are in masculine signs, fortune will be less, in fact much worse. Sextile configurations have a weaker effect, both for good or for the opposite.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

...

For day nativities, /69P/ if Mars should be square with the ☿ while on the left and in another's degrees or signs, it will be the cause of many reversals and afflictions for the mother, as well as reduction in rank. Men will be subject to travel; some become soldiers, toilsome and violent. These things happen, provided that the nativity is not base-born in other respects and that the master of the star, or its helper, or a fellow sect-member are not in places which do not have the Ascendant in aspect. If this condition does obtain <the Ascendant is not in aspect>, men become captives and die by execution.

♂☿

If Mars is in opposition (the other configurations being the same), bad results are stronger and more difficult to avoid. Indeed if it should appear square to the right, men suddenly lose everything. (The difference between square and opposition is great!) If Mars is in Aries <its sign> and the ☿ in Cancer <its sign>, the results are quite different and are like those for trine. Likewise if ♂ is in Scorpio <its sign>, in opposition to the ☿ in Taurus, not only will there be no reversals of fortune, but in fact the stars will produce success and high rank.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

For night nativities, Venus trine with the ☿ and in fem-

♀☿

inine signs makes men charming and fortunate. Some rule the masses /72K/ and are thought worthy of the purple and of golden ornaments—depending on the greatness of the nativity. They become philosophers, artists, scholars, and members of the circle of king’s friends. If both <♀ and the ♃> indicate the the birth is “royal,” because one is the houseruler and the other the master of the nativity, the configuration is dictatorial: men become king of kings, famous, merry. When sextile with each other, they have a more moderate power. When <the stars> an equinoctial sign lies between; even more so, if the configuration beholds ♄ and ♃.

Venus square with the ♃ makes men successful, charming, and wealthy, all that the trine configuration provides—especially if ♀ is in its own sign or degree—but with some ups and downs. What these stars give is easily lost. If the stars are not in their own signs, not in their own sect, or are in contrary degrees, they become the cause of violence, unsteadiness, and infamy due to women or /70P/ vice. If they are in opposition under these circumstances, worse results.

♀♃

DELINEATION  
NOTE

For day nativities, Mercury as a morning star trine with the ♃ makes men inventive, successful, clever, and excitable. If the nativity is quite elevated, it makes secretaries of kings, rulers of cities or districts, scholars, orators, mathematicians.

♃♂

Mercury as an evening star, especially for night births, makes erudite men, philosophers and initiates of the mysteries. If the birth is lofty because of the other stars’ <influences>, it makes noble men, those honored by the masses and acquainted with the great and with kings. ♄ does this by being co-ruler with the star which supplies the primary influence.<sup>1</sup> If it is in an inoperative place, it cannot apply any of its own influence. (In general it will

DELINEATION  
NOTE

<sup>1</sup>Prof. Riley: “as a helper it causes these effects—marginal note”

be seen of all nativities that any star has the same effects in  $\Delta$  as it does when in  $\sigma$  in the same sign.)

$\text{☿}$  sextile with the  $\text{♃}$  has a duller and weaker influence than do the previous configurations.  $\text{☿}\square$  makes men keen and shrewd, but this keenness turns to criminality and the men become /73K/ malicious, slanderers, acting with trickery and violence, inspired by nothing healthy. In addition to the previous <malign> influence, if the two are in  $\text{♌}$ , the native is contrary-minded and ungracious in his activities, and so is harmed by what befalls him.

Mercury trine with  $\text{♃}$ , especially if they are in their own triangles, makes royal stewards, procurators, and those who supervise shipping, estates, and similar operations. They become shrewd, intelligent, and single-minded.  $\text{☿}$  and  $\text{♃}$  square with each other make everything dull: they make men sluggish, quarrelsome, and self-willed, slow in action, and feeding off calumny, treachery, trickery, and violence. They also become practically mute and hard of hearing.  $\text{♂}$  in aspect with  $\text{♃}$  or  $\text{☿}$  cancels the previously mentioned handicap in speaking, if they are not in their houses or terms, if they are not exchanging domiciles, if the  $\text{♃}$  is not in aspect from the right, if they have no contact with it <the  $\text{♃}$ >, and if they are not the overall houserulers or co-houserulers. That's how strong these slight changes are! If they are in  $\text{♌}$ , they separate sisters by death.

 $\text{☿}\Delta\text{♃}$ DELINEATION  
NOTE

Mercury in the Ascendant or at MC makes young men /71P/ learned, intelligent, educated. They do not, however, get the benefits of their talents, because the gifts of these stars will be frozen by the opposing configuration of the stars. If they are precisely in  $\text{♌}$ , to the degree, their effects will reach much further: the native will be handicapped in hearing and in speech; he will take refuge in temples, prophesying or even being mentally distracted.

EXACT  
DEGREE

Mercury trine with  $\text{♃}$  is indicative of great deeds, espe-

 $\text{☿}\Delta\text{♃}$

cially if ☿ is at morning rising. Men become secretaries of kings, of cities, or of the masses, or they become financial officials. Since ☿ is altogether concerned with occupations and provides the active influence, the native will have a high status and the possession of a livelihood, especially if ☿ is in operative signs. If the stars are ✎, /74K/ they have the same effects, but to a lesser degree. If they are □ and configured well, to some extent they bring possessions and status, but with hatred. If they are configured badly, they bring ruin along with hatred, and the opposition of superiors. If the stars are in ♀, they bring even greater slander, and men are at cross purposes and suffer ups and downs. If the stars are in ♀ in the Bad Daimon, men will be crushed by the supreme authority, they will feel the effects of mass insurrections, and they will have few brothers, or will have quarrels with their brothers, children, or relatives.

Mercury trine with ♂ or sextile to the right is indicative of quite varied activities: sometimes it makes secretaries, sometimes merchants, translators, mathematicians, lawyers, philosophers—all of them malignant, bitter, intelligent, lying. This star also makes arms instructors and gladiators. If ♄ is configured with these, especially in operative places, it makes military men, often augurs, sacrificial priests, seers, and those who know more than men should. ☿□ causes even more varied activities than has been mentioned: magi, wanderers, sacrificial priests, doctors, astrologers, demagogues, bankers, counterfeiters, forgers, those making their living by crime, violence, and trickery. Men become thieves, perjurers, atheists, and those who prey on their fellows, are greedy for gain, who are defrauders—in short, those who have nothing admirable in them. As a result, they are involved in many evils and /72P/ have experience of captivity, exile, and prison. <♂ and ☿> cause even worse, especially when they are in inoperative places or degrees. If both are

☿△♂

at IC or in the Descendant, or if one is in the Descendant while the other is at IC, they cause murders; the native will be an accomplice and will make his living as a bandit. A few will be fratricides and their final end will be violent, especially if the stars include the **♃** in their configuration. They will die violently/as suicides and will lie unburied. If the stars are in fourfooted signs, men will be taken by beasts; if in anthropomorphic signs, by bandits; if in **/75K/** solid signs, men will die by falls from heights; if in fiery signs, from fires; if in moist signs, by shipwreck; if in tropic signs, in the arena. The stars do the same things when changing domiciles or in conjunction.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

If one is houseruler and the other is master, and if **♂** is **✕** or in **♊** with **♀**, it will make the native intelligent, charming, artistic, fond of games, endowed with a sense of humor; sometimes poets, songwriters, declaimers, actors, mimes; sometimes athletes and victors in sacred games. These stars are productive of quite varied occupations. If the nativity is feminine, the women become musicians, promiscuous, living like prostitutes, of a literary bent, fond of recitations.

...

Venus trine with **♃** makes men severe, humorless, supercilious, rough in love and promiscuous, yet lying with base-born or elderly women, or with prostitutes. These men lie with the wives of their brothers or patrons, with those of their fathers, or with their stepmothers. Their wives sneak off and lie with their husbands' slaves or friends. It is, of course, necessary to note that predictions can change greatly in accord with the changes of sign and degree: the same configuration, even if the stars occur together, can indicate sordid men, those sleeping in their lusts and sometimes promiscuous; but often it can also indicate those who are unaffected by love, who only take enjoyment by themselves. **<♀ and ♃ > □** are much worse:

**♀Δ♃**

DELINEATION  
NOTE

the effects mentioned for the trine configuration become worse. Men take prostitutes as wives, and they become loathsome and depraved. It is even worse if /73P/ the configuration is in the Descendant or at IC. The deterioration noted above becomes even worse if ♂ in in ♂, □, or ♀: men then act shamefully and are denounced by everyone. Often because of this they become a subject of scandal, are imprisoned, and meet a bad death. If these stars are in “lurking” signs or degrees, /76K/ men enjoy impure passions and unnatural pleasures. If these stars are ✕ with each other, their effects are the same as those attributed to the Δ configuration, but dim and weak. If both are at morning rising in the East, they masculinize women, so that the women not only act like men in their daily life, but they even do the work of men when lying with other women. If these stars are evening stars, they feminize men: sometimes men serve as women when lying with men, but often they lose their sex organs.

Saturn trine with ♄ indicates a favorable configuration. These stars make men landowners, masters of grain-land and vineyards, grainfarmers, constructors of buildings, villages, and towns—but they are austere and supercilious. If the configuration is more exalted, with ♂ in aspect from the right <sup>1</sup>, ♄ and ♄ make men generals, leaders of land and sea forces, and they raise a few men to the kingship or to tyranny. If the configuration happens to be in the triangle of ♄ <♄♄♄>, especially if ♄ is in ♄ with ♂ turned away, the stars make men humble and fearful, not brilliant in anything or sharing in any office, but rather choosing a retired, rustic life. The variations in occupations occur in accord with the differences of sign and place—but the stars do have the same effects when they are together in operative signs.

♄Δ♄

DELINEATION  
NOTE

Saturn □ with ♄ dulls the good influence of ♄, es-

<sup>1</sup>Prof. Riley: “as well as the sun and moon - a marginal note”



pecially if  $\hbar$  is on the right and rising. Then men succeed with great difficulty, they are subject to penalties, they make gains only with toil and pain, and they suffer loss in their children: some are childless, others see the deaths of their children. The Place of Brothers is damaging to them: these stars separate close, loving brothers by death and make the other brothers hateful and vicious, especially when the stars are not at the angles. When in opposition, these stars are most harsh and bring misery and setbacks.

/77K;73P/ Saturn trine with  $\sigma$  points to those who are insecure in their livelihood and unable to endure hardships. They are stupid but violent in their actions. They either have few children or lose those that are born. These men become captives or are injured.  $\hbar \square$  <with  $\sigma$ > is much worse: their children are destroyed, also their brothers; brothers are separated from each other by hatred; they become incorrigible or are injured. They are prone to give offense in their actions and are encompassed by the hostility of great men and are plotted against by them. This configuration falls into great danger: men die violently from attacks of bandits or the enemy, or by shipwreck. A few go into captivity. They are often endangered by fire or sword. If  $\hbar$  and  $\sigma$  are in  $\rho$ , they make the previously mentioned influences much stronger. In addition to the above, men become poor, distressed, unlucky; a few become porters, beasts of burden; they have toilsome and despised jobs.

$\hbar \Delta \sigma$

There is, however, much variation in these configurations, not only with respect to the individual characteristics of the signs and degrees, but also with respect to the greatness of the nativity. If  $\mathbf{L}$ , the  $\mathbf{D}$ , and the  $\odot$  do not behold this configuration, the birth is lowly. If they are in aspect from the right and one is the master of these stars and the other is the houseruler, then the previously mentioned effects happen: quite bad in <the IX Place of> the

DELINEATION  
NOTE

God and <the III Place of> the Goddess; to a lesser and fainter degree in <the XI Place of> Good Daimon and <the V Place of> Good Fortune; but worse and more intense in <the XII Place of> Bad Daimon, <the VI Place of> Bad Fortune, the Inactive and Shadowy Place. If the nativity is exalted and royal. . .

Jupiter trine with ♂, if one is the houseruler and the other the master, indicates great men, leaders and dictators, especially when these stars are in their own signs, triangles, or degrees, in operative signs, or when they have exchanged domiciles or terms, especially if they rule the Lot of Fortune or its houseruler. They make great affairs: kings, those in charge of the military (navies or armies), those who rebuild cities /78K/ or those who destroy them. When ✕, these stars are less strong, just as with the former configurations, but if they are at an angle, they indicate that the evils which are mentioned do not loom over the native but /75P/ over others. They become bunglers of army and naval battles; they become bandit chiefs, violent leaders, sadists, drinkers of blood. If the nativity is professional, e.g. a notary or a lawyer, the native becomes an informer. If the configuration includes ☿, and if the ☾ has contact with ♂, the situation is quite terrible: such men become worse than wild beasts. ♃☐ with ♂ is strong, if one is in the Ascendant and the other is either at MC or in <the XI Place of> Good Daimon. This configuration will be stronger than that of Δ, especially if a tropic sign is between. (If ♃ and ♂ are in the same sign, they are even stronger.) When ☐, they have the same effect as when Δ, but with dangers and setbacks. When in ♊ in inoperative signs, they become harsh. If the rest of the nativity's factors point to leadership for the native, he will fall into great dangers and be betrayed by his relatives and by enemies. If neither star is houseruler or master or co-houseruler, the Δ configuration is mediocre. The native becomes a mili-

♃Δ♂

DELINEATION  
NOTEDELINEATION  
NOTE

tary/government official. If high rank seems to be hinted because of the other stars which are helpers or have the power of helpers, the native will advance in rank. These stars make men rulers of cities and judges on the bench. If the horoscope is military because of the ☉, the ♃, or ♁, the native becomes a decurion and a centurion, <a commander> in short campaigns and of small cities. If the horoscope is base because of the ☉, the ♃, and the rest of the stars, or if ♀ and ♁ are ♁ with them, men become base: slaves /79K/ of officials, subordinates of governors; they are frequently hunters, gladiators, and weapon makers. These things are indicated by the alteration of the signs' <positions>: if they are at the angles, they cause greatness from youth; if they rise just after an angle, they cause greatness beginning in adulthood; if they rise before an angle, they cause lowliness and degradation./76P

DELINEATION  
NOTE

## 2.17 The Lot of Fortune as the Ascendant (17K,18P)

Having explained the trine arrangements, I will move on to the Lot of Fortune<sup>1</sup>.

First of all it is necessary to determine the Lot of Fortune and to see in what part of the cosmos it is located: at an angle, just following an angle, or just preceding an angle. Likewise look for the ruler of the Lot. If it is in the Ascendant during the day or is in some other operative place, with the ☉, the ☿, or benefics in aspect, it will make the native noble, distinguished, and fortunate. Its effects are more moderate when it is found at the other angles or just following an angle. When it precedes an angle, assume <the nativity to be> stillborn or abandoned—these are the disagreeable places which bring crises and ruin.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

In addition, after finding the Place which has been assigned to Fortune, examine the points square with it and the other aspects, just as with the angles in the natal chart. The Lot itself will be equivalent to the Ascendant and will mean “Life;” the tenth place from it will be equivalent to MC and will mean “Rank;” the seventh will be the Descendant; the fourth IC. The other places will have the same effects as the <original> XII Places.

Some astrologers have mystically hypothesized that the astronomical Ascendant and the points square with it are the Cosmic Angles, while the Lot and the points square with it are the Natal Angles, and they have revealed this in their treatises as follows: “When assigning the influence of the Lot among all the multifarious configurations of the angles. . . /80K/ neither the tropic nor the solid nor the bicornporeal signs will have the same overall effects. It is therefore necessary to examine the aspects or

---

<sup>1</sup>Prof. Riley: “And of Daimon; concerning prosperity - a marginal note”

the conjunctions of the stars relative to the Lot: for example, a benefic in conjunction or in aspect with the Lot will be a sign of good and a giver of property. A destructive star <in conjunction or in aspect> will be responsible for loss of goods and sickness of the body. /**77P**/

## 2.18 The Exaltation of the Sun and Moon. Their Effects on Prosperity (18K,19P)

We ourselves have found from experience a mystical way of calculating: for day births determine the distance from the ☉ at the nativity to ♄, which is the ☉'s exaltation (for night births from the ♀ to ☿). <Count this> same distance from the Ascendant and examine the place where the count stops and its ruler. If it is found to be in the Ascendant or at MC, especially at an angle relative to the Lot, it indicates a royal chart, provided the other stars and procedures point to a basis of greatness for the nativity. In addition, if the nativity is of high rank, and if the exaltation or the houseruler is favorably situated, the native will be exalted even beyond/to leadership, civil or royal office, or other distinguished positions of responsibility.

If the basis of the nativity is average, and the ruler of the exaltation or the place itself is favorably situated, the native will be successful in the status to which he has been assigned: a craft, a science, or a talent. The houseruler itself and the sign will point out the type of good fortune to be expected, either from its own nature or from the sign in which it is located. Many times men have fared poorly in early life and have been in distress and gone astray, but later they have become lucky because of other factors. /81K/

### 2.19 The Lot of Fortune and Daimon. Their Influence on Prosperity and the Outcome of Actions (19K,20P)

For the reason mentioned above, the Lot of Fortune and Daimon have great influence on undertakings and their outcomes. The former gives information about matters concerning the body and concerning the work of hands. Daimon and its ruler give information about spiritual and intellectual matters and about the activities of giving and receiving. It will be necessary to examine the places and the signs in which their houserulers are located and to correlate their natures, in order to learn the type of activity and fortune and the quality of activity <to be expected>. Nativities will be considered glorious, distinguished, and vigorous /78P/ if they are from the ☉ and ☽, and if benefics are in conjunction or incline to these places or houserulers. The nativities from ♄ and ♀ are mediocre, inglorious, ruined, or adverse.

It is best to find the ruler of Daimon at the Lot of Fortune or at its 10th Place (=Midheaven)<sup>1</sup>. If so, then the nativities are illustrious and distinguished.

If it is in its proper place or at another angle, the nativities will be as distinguished and vigorous as they can be under the circumstances.

If it is turned away from its proper place, just precedes an angle, or has malefics in aspect, it indicates exile and distress abroad.

If it is in conjunction with a benefic or has benefics in

---

<sup>1</sup>So that it is at MC relative to the Lot. Note that <the author> defines “to be at an angle” as the same or as equivalent to “to be in its proper place.” In the same way he makes “to just precede an angle” equivalent to “to not be in its proper place.” “Having malefics in aspect” is in the same category as “being turned away” i.e. in the 8th place <relative to the Lot> - a marginal note.

aspect, the native will live abroad for a long time, having a varied and fluctuating livelihood.

If /**82K**/ it has a malefic in aspect, the native will become needy, destitute, experiencing trials and imprisonment. Likewise if <the ruler of the Lot or of Daimon> is in opposition to this place, it indicates men who reside abroad and become distressed. Often the goods of such men are not inherited by their own families, but by strangers.



## 2.20 The 11th Place [Relative to the Lot] of Fortune and its Influence on Prosperity (20K,21P)

We have found the 11th Place <relative to the Lot> of Fortune to be the Place of Accomplishment, the bestower of property and goods, especially if benefics are in this Place or in aspect.

The Sun, Jupiter, and Venus provide gold, silver, jewelry, and very great property, as well as gifts from the great and from kings. They cause men to spend money on the masses for noble purposes and to become benefactors of many people.

The Moon and Mercury bring ups and downs of livelihood, bringing changes and sometimes making men liberal and generous, at other times needy and burdened with debts. This happens because of the ☿'s waxing and waning, and because ♀ shares qualities of good and bad.

Mars takes away what was gained and possessed, causing reductions, thefts, burning, trials, confiscation for public or royal use, or proscriptions /79P/ and condemnations. If, however, the nativity is in government or otherwise distinguished, then men will become successful due to an <astrological> impulse, from violent and dangerous action, and from theft—provided that the star is in its proper place. Even so, the star will make the occupation risky and will cause losses.

Saturn when configured in its proper places makes men rulers of estates and property; if out of place and in the wrong sect it brings disaster, ruin, shipwreck, poverty, and debt. ♄ with ♀ and ♂ forecasts men who are abused by the onslaughts of trials or of criminals, or because of religious or violent matters. ♄, ♀, ♂, and ♁ forecast men who are wronged by poisons or by females, and who are accused. ♄, ♂, ♀, ♁, ♋, and the ☿ forecast men who ben-

efit from legacies and who profit from shipping, overseas trade, or moist matters. /**83K**/

In general, Saturn and Mars at MC or rising just after MC and ruling the Lot and the Place of Accomplishment indicate exile.

It is necessary to review the nature of each star and to make predictions according to its specific contribution and property relative to each other star. It is not just the stars in conjunction with the Place of Accomplishment which supply the indications previously mentioned. The sign itself will be influential according to the star's nature, as well as its own.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

## 2.21 Examples for the Preceding Chapters (21K,22P)

For clarification of the previous points, we will use examples, taking first a distinguished nativity:

### [Chart 1 *Illustrious and Distinguished*]

☉ in ♍, ☽ in ♎, ♃ in ♊, ♅ in ♈, ♀ in ♎, ☿ in ♍, Ascendant in ♎<sup>1</sup>.

Since the birth was at night, I investigate the ☽: this happens to be in ♎, △ with ♀. We find ♀ rising just after the Ascendant and in its own house <♍>, triangle <♍♂♎>, and

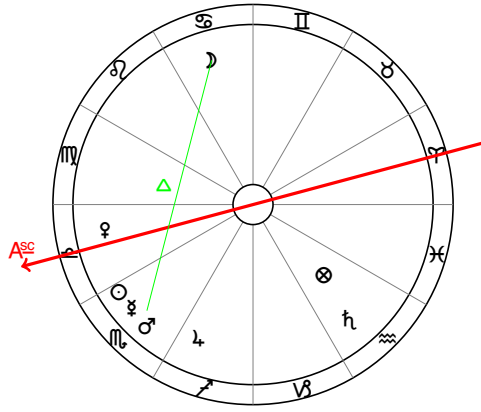


Figure 2.1: Chart 1 [II.22.1, GH L50]

sect <nocturnal><sup>2</sup>. Then we find ♀ sharing rulership with ♀, being in the Ascendant and in its own house <♎>. Third, we find the ☽ at MC in its own house <♎>. It is obvious that the nativity is distinguished, since the houserulers are configured so appropriately. Investigating the Lot of Fortune, I find it in ♊; ♃ is there, the ruler <of ♊> and in <the V Place of> Good Fortune, in its own house <♊> and /80P/ triangle <♊♎♐>. Likewise the 11th Place from the Lot of

<sup>1</sup>Greek *Horoscopes* dates the chart to approximately October 25, 50 A.D. (p.81)

<sup>2</sup>Must be referring to the chart sect as ♀ is placed below the horizon in the diurnal hemisphere and so out of sect.

Fortune, i.e. the Place of Accomplishment, is <♄>, and ♄ is there.

I also found the exaltation of the nativity: from the ♃ to ♆ is eleven signs, and the same distance from the Ascendant in ♌ brings me to ♄, in <the XI Place of> [the] Good Daimon. The ☉ is the ruler of this and since it is found to be at MC with respect to the Lot of Fortune, it made the birth even more illustrious and distinguished.

[Chart 2 *Rise from Mediocrity*]

Another example: ☉, ☿ in ♂, ♀ in ♎, ♁, ☿, ♀, Ascendant in ♊, ♀ in ♋, ☿ and the exaltation of the nativity in ♎<sup>1</sup>.

The native rose from mediocre origins to become a prefect and a governor. Since this was a day birth, I found the ☉ in the triangle of the ♀ <♂♎♋> and its partners, ♀ and ♂, at an angle <Ascendant>, the /84K/ Lot

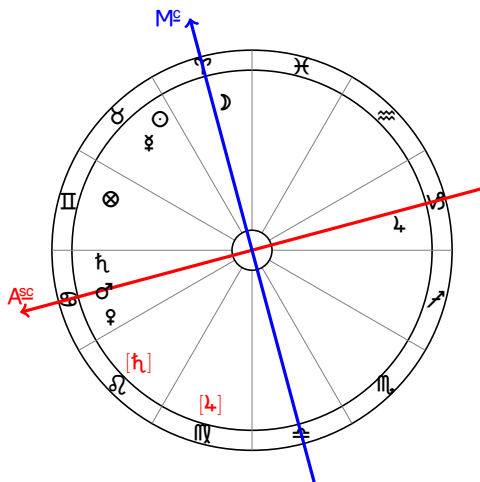


Figure 2.2: Chart 2 [II.21.2, GH 95,V,18]

of Fortune and the exaltation in ♎, just preceding an angle (hence the beginning of his life was humble), and its ruler <☿> in <the XI Place of> [the] Good Daimon.

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* has this as L95,V,II with ♁ in ♌ and ♀ in ♎. According to GH, “no date in the first three centuries of our era corresponds to the data of the text according to which ♁, ♂, and ♀ should be in ♊” (p.98); moving ♁ into ♌ makes the chart almost parallel to example Chart 9 and places the date at approximately May 19, 95 A.D.. The alternate placements are shown in red.

*[Chart 3 Rise from Ordinary Means to Wealth]*

Another example: ☉, ♂, ♀, ♄ in ♊, ♃, ♀ in ♎, ♄ in ♎, ♄ in ♎, Ascendant in ♎<sup>1</sup>.

This nativity also went from humble and ordinary fortune to the fortune of a prefect and a wealthy man.

Since it was a day birth, we find the ☉ in the triangle of ♄ <♊♎♌>

with ♄ just preceding an angle <MC>. Therefore his first years were ordinary. ♄'s partner, ♀, is at an angle <Descendant>. We find the Lot of Fortune in ♏, the exaltation in ♌, and the ruler of these <♀> is at MC relative to the Lot of Fortune and at an angle <Descendant> otherwise <=relative to the Ascendant>.

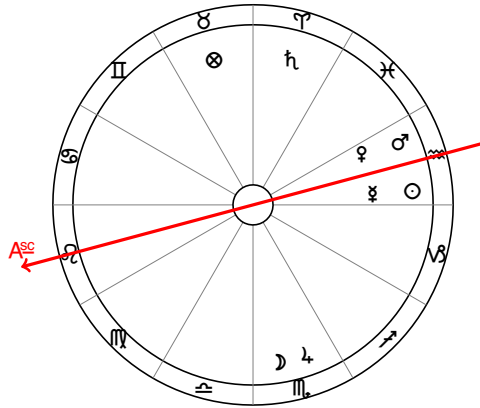


Figure 2.3: Chart 3 [II.21.3, GH L85]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L85) to February 5, 85 AD (p.93-4).



*[Chart 5 From Servitude to Power]*

Another example: ☉, ☿, ♄, ♀ in ♈, ♃ in ☊, ♂ in ♏, ♀, Ascendant in ♎<sup>1</sup>.

Since this was a night birth, /81P/ we find the ♃ in the triangle of ♂ <☊♏♈> with ♂ itself and the Lot of Fortune and its ruler <♀> preceding angles. Therefore he lived his first years humbly and in poverty;

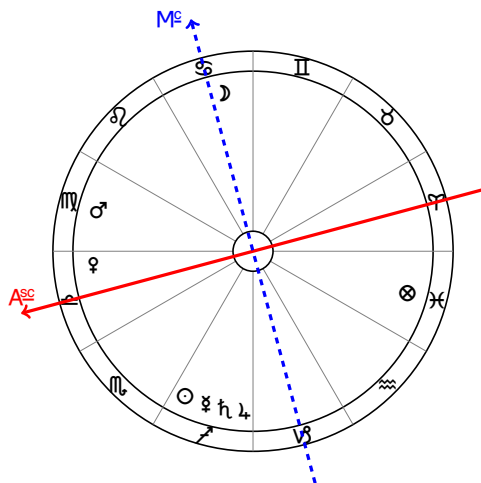


Figure 2.5: Chart 5 [V II.21.5, GH L74.XI]

he experienced captivity and servitude and was involved in many dangers. But since the stars of the same sect happened to be in operative places, he came into friendships and associations and received positions of royal trust. Since the exaltation of the nativity was found in ♏, and its ruler, the ☉, was at MC relative to the Lot of Fortune, he was thought worthy of the governorship and a position of power.

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L74.XI) to approximately November 26, 74 AD. It is also used as an example in Book VII.36 where the MC is given as being in ☊. A night birth.



*[Chart 6 Rise to High Priesthood]*

Another example: ☉, ☿ in ♊, ♀ in ♈, ♄ in ♌, ♃ in ♍, ♀ in ♎, ♁ in ♏, ☽ in ♐, Ascendant in ♈<sup>1</sup>.

This nativity too was at first irregular and mediocre, but later he rose and gained chaplets and a high priesthood.

The rulers of the triangle <of the Lot of Fortune: ♂♂♂>

<sup>2</sup> were found to be following an

angle <Descendant>, and the third ruler <♂> of the triangle and the ruler of the Lot were at MC. Likewise the ruler <☉> of the exaltation of the nativity <♌> was at MC relative to the Lot of Fortune, as was the ruler <☿> of Daimon <♊>

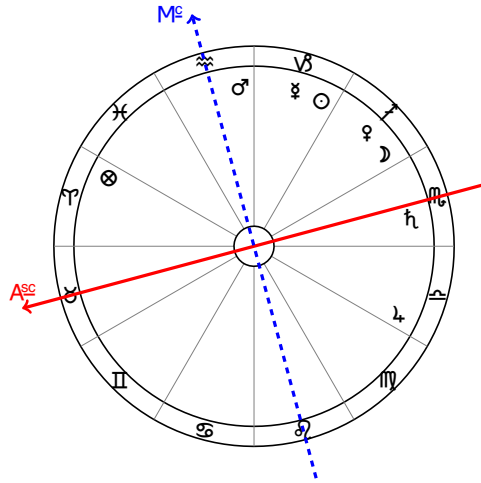


Figure 2.6: Chart 6 [II.21.6, GH L72]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L72) to approximately January 6, 72 AD (p.85).

<sup>2</sup> Fortune is in ♐; the ♂♂♂ triplicity is the triplicity of the sect light, the ☉ in ♊.

*[Chart 7 Rise to High Priesthood]*

Another example: ☉, ♀ in ♉, ☽ in ♋, ♄ in ♌, ♀ in ♍, ♀ in ♎, Ascendant in ♈<sup>1</sup>.

This nativity too was illustrious and distinguished.

The native was entrusted with royal office and was thought worthy of a high priesthood. The ruler <♂> of the triangle <♉♎♌> was found with the ruler of Daimon <♄> in

<the XI Place of> Good Daimon and with the Lot of Fortune. The ☉, at MC, was assigned the Lot. The ruler of the exaltation, the ☽, was at MC relative to the Lot of Fortune. The Place of Accomplishment was irregular and unstable, sometimes being too full, at other times empty, for ♄ and ♀ were in aspect to it <☐>.

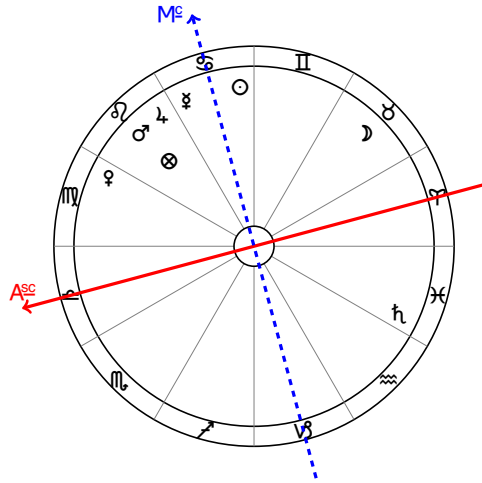


Figure 2.7: Chart 7 [II.21.7, GH L82]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L82) to approximately July 9, 82 AD (p.92)

[Chart 8 Raised Livelihood]

Another example: ☉, ♄, ♂, ♀ in ♌, ♄ in ♎, ☽ in ♏, ♀ in ♏, Ascendant in ♏<sup>1</sup>.

The ruler of the exaltation, ♄, was found in ♏, at MC relative to the Lot of Fortune<sup>2</sup>, and it elevated the nativity with respect to livelihood. Likewise the rulers <☉, ♄> of the triangle <of the ☉: ♏-♏-♏>

and of the Lot of Fortune<sup>3</sup> were found at IC. This made him miserly, unambitious, and niggardly.

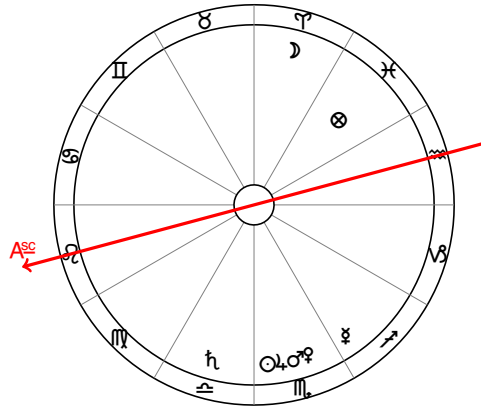


Figure 2.8: Chart 8 [II.21.8, GH L97,XI]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L97,XI) to approximately November 6, 97 AD (p.99)

<sup>2</sup> If ♏ is the 10th from Fortune, the Lot must be in ♏.

<sup>3</sup> ♄ rules Fortune in ♏.



*[Chart 10 Born into Wealth]*

Another example: ☉, ♀ in ♌, ☽ in ♎, ♄ in ♏, ♀ in ♏, ♂ in ♏, ♀, Ascendant in ♏<sup>1</sup>.

Even when he was a child, the nativity inherited great property. The Place of Accomplishment was in ♏, with ♀ in its own house. ♀, the co-ruler of the triangle, the Lot of Fortune<sup>2</sup>

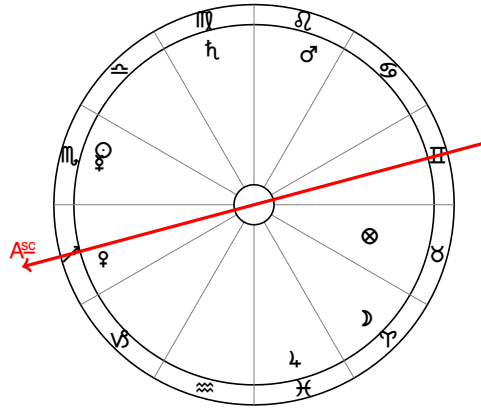


Figure 2.10: Chart 10 [II.21.10, GH L65,X]

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L65,X) to approximately October 31, 65 AD (p.85) but claims the date is “plausible...[but] a tentative solution” as they feel “some elements [as given in the text] must be wrong”

<sup>2</sup>Calculated as  $\text{Asc} + (\text{☽} - \text{☉}) = \text{♏} + (\text{♏} - \text{♏}) = 240 + (360 - 150) = 30$  or ♏.

**[Chart 11  
Prosperity to Exile]**

Another example: ☉, ☿ in ♊, ♄, ♃ in ♈, ♀ in ♋, Ascendant in ♈<sup>1</sup>.

The rulers  
<♄, ☉> of the  
triangle <of  
the ☉> were  
found at angles,  
but in opposi-  
tion <MC IC>.  
Therefore the  
nativity, though  
well provided  
for and prosper-  
ous at first, was  
later found to  
be exiled and  
needy because of burning and plunder. The ruler of the  
Lot of Fortune, ☿, was found in the Place of Accom-  
plishment, but preceding an angle <Ascendant> and in  
aspect with ♃<☐>.

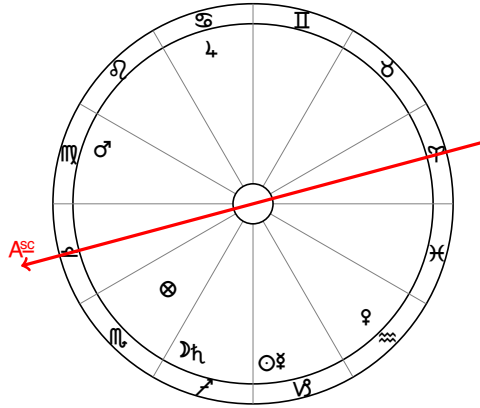


Figure 2.11: Chart 11 [II.21.11, GH L105]

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L65,X) to approximately January 1, 105 AD (p.103)

*[Chart 12 Political Prestige to Vagabond]*

Another example:  $\odot$ ,  $\text{♀}$ , Ascendant in  $\text{♋}$ ,  $\text{♎}$  in  $\text{♊}$ ,  $\text{♏}$  in  $\text{♍}$ ,  $\text{♌}$  in  $\text{♈}$ ,  $\text{♊}$  in  $\text{♈}$ ,  $\text{♏}$ ,  $\text{♎}$  in  $\text{♈}$ .

In his first years, the native had great political prestige, affairs, and positions of trust. The rulers <♀> of the triangle <♂-♁-♂> happened to be at angles <Ascendant, MC>. Later his

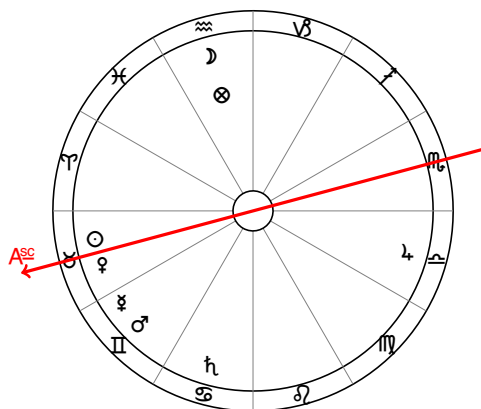


Figure 2.12: Chart 12 [II.21.12, GH L61,V]

livelihood was ruined and he become a vagabond. ♂ and ♀ were in opposition to the Place of Accomplishment and the rulers <h4> of the Lot<sup>2</sup> and of the Place of Accomplishment preceded angles <IC Descendant>.

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L61,V) to approximately May 1, 61 AD (p.81)

<sup>2</sup>Lot of Fortune = Asc + (♂ - ☉) = 30 + (300 - 30) = 300, ♊, ruled by ♈. The place of Accomplishment is in the 11th from the Fortune, here, ♊, ruled by ♈.

*[Chart 13 From Slavery to Honors]*

Another example: ☉, ♀ in II, ☽ in V♂, ♄, ♂ in ♊, ♀, Ascendant in ♉, ♄ in ♎.<sup>1</sup>

This man, though born a slave, entered a noble family, attained political offices, and enjoyed honors. The rulers <♄♀> of the triangle of the ☉ <II-♌-♊> and of the Lot<sup>2</sup>

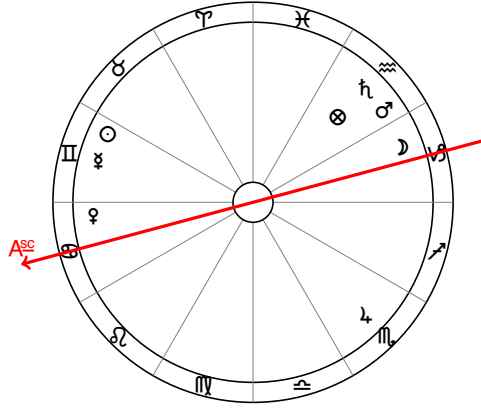


Figure 2.13: Chart 13 [II.21.13, GH L109]

and the exaltation were found in their own domains and in aspect with ♄. /83P/ ♂, ♄, and ♀ were unfavorably situated and so reduced his means and made him financially embarrassed.

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L61,V) to approximately June 2, 109 AD (p.104)

<sup>2</sup>Lot of Fortune = Asc + (☽ - ☉) = 90 + (270 - 60) = 300, ♊, ♄ ruler.



*[Chart 14 Distinguished Priest with Many Troubles and Losses]*

Another example: ☉ in ♊, ☽, ♃ in ♌, ♏ in ♎, ♂, ♀, ♄ in ♍, Ascendant in ♏<sup>1</sup>.

This man was a eunuch, a distinguished priest of the goddess. /87K/ The ruler <♃> of the Lot<sup>2</sup> happened to be in ♌, <the IX Place of> the God. The rulers of the <diurnal> sect, ♏ and ♄, were

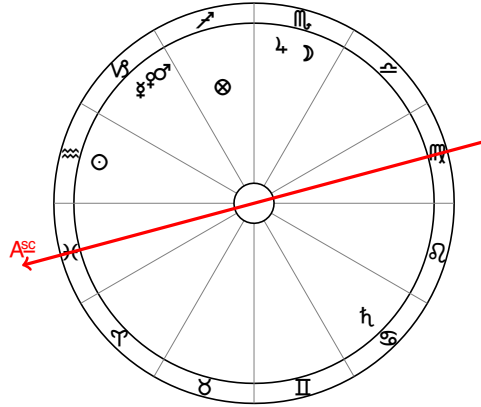


Figure 2.14: Chart 14 [II.21.14, GH L62]

found in Good Daimon, but in opposition. Therefore he fell into a great many troubles and losses and quarrels with governors and kings.

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L62,V) to approximately January 22, 62 AD (p.83)

<sup>2</sup>Lot of Fortune = Asc + (☽ - ☉) = 330 + ((360+210) - 300) = 600 - 360 = 240, ♏, ruled by ♃ in ♌.

## 2.22 Notable and Distinguished Nativities. Also Ignoble and Debased Nativities (22K,23P)

I must append the following powerful places in order to clarify the topic of in notable and distinguished nativities.

If the Sun and the Moon are in operative signs and are attended by most of the stars which are rising, with no malefics in opposition, they make fortunate and notable nativities of governors and kings. The same is true if their rulers happen to be at an angle.

If the sign of the new or full moon or the ruler of this sign happens to be in the Ascendant or at MC, the native will be fortunate.

If the Sun or the Moon or most of the stars are found at IC, the native will be distinguished and rich, but <the stars> will ruin his life terribly or involve him in hatred, lawsuits, and slander.

Since we wish to make very clear judgements about the Place/topic of prosperity, I will explain it further by citing many proven methods. Each planetary configuration is effective in its own way, but when comparing one with another, you will find that one elevates the native's rank when it is exalted, another utterly overthrows it when it is afflicted. Therefore we append this discussion to reinforce <our teachings about> the previously mentioned pattern of influences, not to abandon them.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

### *[Interperating Fortune, Daimon, Basis, and Accomplishment]*

So it will be necessary to calculate the effects of the Lot of Daimon in the same way we described for the Lot <of Fortune>. For day births, this Lot is found by determining the distance from the ☿ /84P/ to the ☾ (for night births, from the ☾ to the ☿), then counting this distance

LOT OF  
DAIMON

from the Ascendant<sup>1</sup>. Now examine the ruler of the Lot and its place—whatever that happens to be.

Do the same for the Lot of Basis: it is found by determining the distance from Fortune to Daimon <for day births> or from Daimon to Fortune <for night births>, then counting that distance from the Ascendant. /88K/ (The distance will not exceed the number 7 <=7 signs> for night or day births but it is necessary to take the distance from the nearest Lot to the other Lot.) Then determine the place and its houseruler.

LOT OF  
BASIS

Now then, if the houserulers exchange places—i.e. if the ruler of the Lot of Fortune is in the Lot of Basis, the ruler of Basis is in the Lot of Daimon, and the ruler of Daimon is in the place of Fortune—the native is fortunate, royal, noted.

If the ruler of Basis, together with the ruler of Daimon, is in the place of Daimon, the native is fortunate and great-hearted.

If the rulers of Daimon, of Fortune, and of Basis are in their proper places, in such cases as well the native is fortunate.

If Daimon is in conjunction with the ☉ and its ruler is rising, the native is fortunate.

DAIMON

Likewise if Venus rules Fortune, Daimon, or Basis and is found to be rising and in its proper place, the native is fortunate. If its ruler is in Basis and the ☿ is in conjunction with it, the native will be fortunate and distinguished. If its ruler is in Daimon and the ☉ is in conjunction with it, the native will be fortunate, distinguished, and dictatorial.

---

<sup>1</sup>By day: Asc + (☉ - ☿). By Night: Asc + (☿ - ☉), essentially the reverse of the Lot of Fortune calculation

If Mars is found to be in Daimon and in the places of the ♄, with the ♄ in conjunction, the nativity is ruling, governing, and distinguished.

If Mercury is found in Daimon, rising, and with benefics in aspect in the places of the ♄, the native will gain fortune from letters and education; he will have many friends and be renowned, be thought worthy of honors, gifts, and high rank, and will be called blessed by many.

If Jupiter rules Daimon with ♃ in superior aspect, the native will not suffer misfortune, but will be vigorous and distinguished. He will, however, meet with reverses, be ruined, and experience arrest and exile.

If the ruler is in Daimon and is rising with the ♄, the native will be fortunate, rich, and generous.

If the Sun is in Daimon, in its own sect, and with its houseruler in its proper place, the native will be distinguished, elegant, and will have many friends. If it is in another place, the native will be fortunate after the chronocratorship of its adversary. /89K;85P/

If the rulers of Daimon and of Fortune are found in the place of Basis, with the houseruler in conjunction, the nativity will be illustrious and renowned.

Likewise if the rulers of Basis and of Fortune are found in Daimon, with the houserulers in conjunction, the nativity will be great and fortunate.

Men who have the rulers of Fortune and of Daimon at morning rising in their proper places, with the ☉ and ♄ in aspect, will become famous and distinguished. Associating with kings and priests, they will be thought worthy of gifts and high rank.

*[Unfortunate Indications]*

If Venus (or any one of the other stars) is found to be ruling the Lot <of Fortune> or Daimon along with the ☉ and the ☽, and is not in its proper place, but is unfavorably situated, the native will have hard luck and be ineffective in his efforts. If some of them are in their proper places, the native will associate with great men, will be at court, and will receive positions of trust, but in the matter of women he will be grieved and childless.

If the rulers of Fortune and of Accomplishment do not happen to be in their own places, exaltations, triangles, or degrees, although they are at angles or proceeding with their proper motion, then they ruin nativities, especially when malefics are in aspect or in opposition to these places.

ACCOMP-  
LISHMENT

If benefics happen to be at angles, rising, and proceeding with their proper motion, they make the native illustrious and famous.

If the stars just follow an angle, the native lives off his own revenues.

If Accomplishment is afflicted, even though the Lots of Fortune, Daimon, and Basis are favorably situated, men lose their property in the course of their youth.

If Fortune is in an unpropitious place and [if] the rulers of Fortune or of Accomplishment happen to be at the lower angles <Descendant IC> or just following them, men will acquire prosperity and reputation in the course of their youth.

If malefics are in conjunction with or in opposition to Accomplishment, when this Place is not at an angle, and if they are alien to the nativity<sup>1</sup> and in alien signs and degrees, they then cause destruction of property, even if

---

<sup>1</sup>Of opposite sect?

the Lot of Fortune and its ruler are favorably situated.  
/90K/

Whenever the ruler of Fortune and the ruler of Accomplishment are in opposition, /86P/ even if they are benefics, they cause property to look like a mirage and to be infirm and at risk. If the rulers are malefics, they bring disaster. If Accomplishment is in opposition to Daimon, they bring failures of enterprises, loss, and damage, if they do not have benefics in conjunction.

If the ruler of Accomplishment is in opposition to Accomplishment, it makes wealth useless. If it happens to be malefic, so much the worse. If benefics are retrograde, they do the same thing, and in such circumstances they cause disasters.

BENEFIC AS  
MALEFIC

If Accomplishment is in opposition to the houserulers, especially if they are malefic and not in their own sect, the native comes close to disaster.

If Mars is in conjunction or opposition to Accomplishment, the native wastes his substance in pleasures and drink. Likewise if the ruler of Accomplishment is in opposition to it <♂>, the native is extravagant. The same is true if the ruler of Accomplishment is itself retrograde in motion, not at an angle, or in another's degrees or house.

### 2.23 The Lot of Debt (23K,24P)

If the Lot of Debt is <badly> situated or if its ruler is square or in opposition to it, with malefics beholding, in opposition, or in superior aspect, this Lot makes nativities debtors.

The Lot of Debt is calculated by determining the distance from **☿** to **♄** then counting that same distance from the Ascendant.

CALC.

From the Lots located in this place, or from the stars in conjunction <with Accomplishment>, opposition, or square with this Lot, the fate of the native's property will be obvious. The same conclusions can be drawn from the stars in conjunction with Fortune, with Daimon, with Accomplishment, or from the Lots coinciding with them, and from their rulers.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

Particularly examine the Lot of Deceit and the Lot of Theft to see if they have some relationship with Accomplishment, Fortune, Daimon, or Life, or any relationship with the rulers of these Lots. It is possible that those <stars> which bring possessions derived from these unwholesome activities, have no relationship <with those places>.

If the places just mentioned /**91K**/ have no relationship with Accomplishment, Life, Fortune, or Daimon, <the Lot of Debt> ruins the livelihood of the native and his property. If they do have such a relationship, /**87P**/ you will find that his property comes from crime, deceit, plots, force, theft, and violence.

**2.24 The Lot of Theft (24K,25P)**

For day births, the position of the Lot is calculated by determining the distance from ☿ to ♂, then counting the same distance from ♄; for night births, measure from ♂ to ☿, then from ♄.



## 2.25 The Lot of Deceit (25K,26P)

For day births, determine the distance from the ☉ to ♂, then count the same distance from the Ascendant; for night births, the opposite <=from ♂ to the ☉>.

If the rulers of the Lots of Fortune, Accomplishment, or Daimon are located in the Lots of Deceit or Theft, the native will gain his livelihood from violence and crime, or from someone's help. If the rulers of all these Lots are in conjunction, they have the same effect.

If the rulers of theft or Deceit are in conjunction either with the Lot of Fortune, Daimon, or Accomplishment, the native's livelihood will be from these same activities.

If benefics are in aspect with these places, especially in their proper places or in their own sect, they give the native good moral tone. If malefics are in opposition or square, the interpretation must be carefully considered<sup>1</sup>.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

### ⟨Ignoble and Debased Nativities⟩

We must now discuss nativities which are ruined and debased after knowing good fortune.

If the Place of Rank and Exaltation has malefics not appropriate to the nativity<sup>2</sup> in opposition, or if its ruler does not have ♄ in aspect, especially if the luminaries just follow an angle or if the ☿ is afflicted, the native's standing and his high position will be ruined. The ruler of the Lot of Fortune, when in opposition to Exaltation or to the ruler of Exaltation, makes the native's standing and high position precarious. Likewise the ruler of Daimon and the Lots <in opposition> to each other are unpleasant and destructive of rank.

---

<sup>1</sup>Implication is the "good moral tone" may be compromised if the malefics are in hard aspect

<sup>2</sup>Not of the same sect?

/92K/ If the places of the Lot of Exaltation and the Lot of Standing are in opposition, and if the Lots or their rulers are beheld by malefics, /88P/ they afflict themselves: the native will become disgraced, ruined, and insulted.

If the rulers of the Lot of Fortune, Daimon, or Exaltation are in opposition to the Lot of Standing—either to the Lot itself or to its ruler—or if malefics are in aspect, particularly in superior aspect, to these Lots, the native will be ruined and insulted. The same is true, especially when a malefic is in aspect to the Lot of Standing: it will then bring degradation of livelihood and status on the native, especially when the malefic is at an angle. In such a case it is clearly obvious that evil portends for the native.

The luminaries are ill-omened when in opposition to their exaltations or to the ruler of Exaltation, particularly when the luminaries are afflicted and are not in their own sect, either one or both of them. They then bring infamy and ruin on nativities. If Exaltation is at MC and a malefic is at IC, the native will succeed in his early years and be honored by many, especially if a benefic is in aspect on the right, but later he will be ruined. If the opposite situation obtains, he will be renowned later, despite having had ill fortune in his early years. If the places are completely afflicted, they indicate ill-fortune from the native's youth—just as (the opposite case) if benefics are in aspect with the places, good clearly portends, all according to the specific natures and locations of the signs and stars.

Or again: if Daimon is in opposition to Exaltation, it will ruin the nativity. For any nativity, whenever most of the places or their rulers are afflicted, or whenever the new moon, the full moon, or the Lot of Standing have the Lots of Justice, Hostility, or Necessity in conjunction, in oppo-

sition, or in square, then the nativities meet with great upheavals and are harmed with respect to their standing.

If the afflicted places are few, or if only the Place of Exaltation or its ruler is afflicted, the native will end up unsuccessful, obscure, and contemptible.

Malefics in opposition or in superior aspect to the Place of Status bring ruin to /93K/ nativities. If the ruler of Exaltation and the ruler of Status are in opposition, as well as the Lots and their masters, the native is held in contempt.

If ♄ is in conjunction with Exaltation and is at an angle, or if it is the ruler of an angle, it makes men renowned. If it is in the signs of Mars <♂, ♀> or in its [own] degrees, or if it happens to be /89P/ in its own signs <♂, ♀>, the native will be master of life and death.

As a result, the previously mentioned places and stars, when found in operative signs, make glorious, governing, royal nativities. When found in moderately active signs, they make noble and famous men who take control. When found in signs which just precede an angle, they make wealthy and vigorous men, stewards of others, men thought worthy of positions of trust and responsibility.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

## 2.26 Examples of the Previously Mentioned Places (26K,27P)

### [Chart 15 *Fortunate, A Leader*]

Let the ☉, ☾, ♄, ♀ be in ♈, ♏, Ascendant in ♎, ♂ in ♐<sup>1</sup>, ♀ in ♋<sup>2</sup>.

This person was fortunate, a leader, dictatorial, possessed of royal fortune, and in solid possession of great property. The Lot of Fortune, Daimon, and Basis were located in the same sign <♎>, and ♀, the ruler of

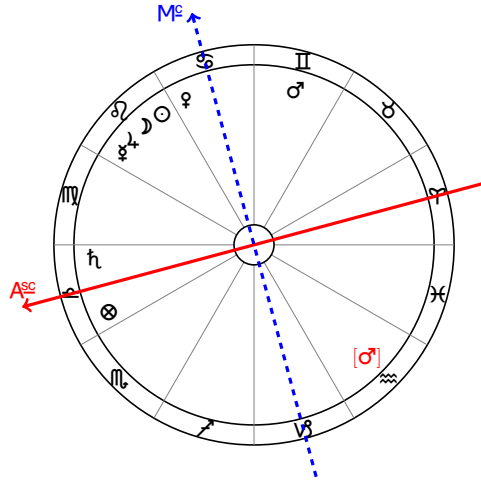


Figure 2.15: Chart 15 [II.26.1, GH L188]

these Lots, was at MC in ♋. The ruler <♄> of the triangle <♈-♏-♐> and the ruler <♀> of the Exaltation <♐> were found in <the XI Place of> Good Daimon and in Accomplishment.

<sup>1</sup>GH places ♂ in ♋.

<sup>2</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L188) to approximately August 10, 188 AD (p.130)

## [Chart 16 A Governor]

Another example: ☉, ☿, ♀, Ascendant in ♈, ♎ in ♉, ♄ in ♊, ♂ in ♋, ♀ in ♌<sup>1 2</sup>

This person was a governor, a master of life and death because the stars were found in their own domains<sup>3</sup>.

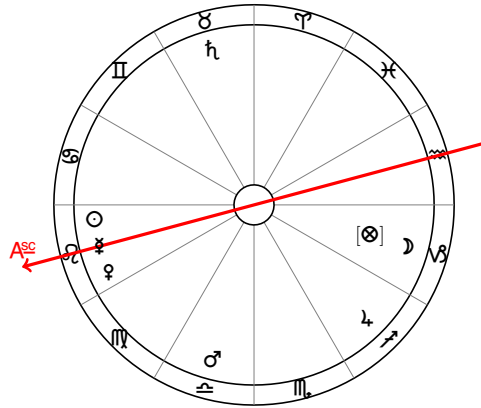


Figure 2.16: Chart 16 [II.26.2, GH L86]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L86) to approximately August 11, 86 AD (p.94).

<sup>2</sup> If the chart is a day chart, ☿ would be in ♌ with the ♀ and ruled by ♎ in the MC. If a night birth, it would be in ♍, ruled by ♂ declining in the 3rd which would put a damper on any fortune.

<sup>3</sup> Only the ☉ in ♈ and ♄ in ♊ are in their own “domains” (houses). ♎, the other co-ruler of the ♎-♈-♊ triangle has no essential dignity in ♉.

*[Chart 17 Exile and Violent Death ]*

Another example: ☉, ☽, ♃, Ascendant in ♉, ♀ in ♊, ♂ in ♋, ♀ in ♌<sup>1</sup>

This person was commanding and dictatorial because the rulers <☉, ♃> of the triangle <♌-♉-♉> were found to be at an angle and in the Ascendant.

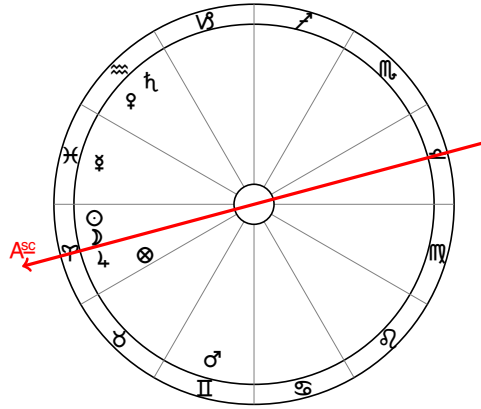


Figure 2.17: Chart 17 [II.26.3, GH L78]

The Lot of Fortune, Daemon, and Basis, as well as the Exaltation, were located in the same place <♉>. The ruler of these, ♂, being unfavorably situated and not in aspect with the <III> Place<sup>2</sup> had the opposite effects, /94K/ both exile and violent death; for it was the ruler of the new moon <in ♉>.

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L78) to approximately April 1, 78 AD (p.91).

<sup>2</sup> This doesn't make much sense. No planet is in aspect to the "place" (house) it occupies and ♂ is sextile the 1st House, the place it rules. GH says there's a lacuna in the Kroll text leaving the original meaning in doubt. It's possible the original meaning meant the placement and aspect were not fortunate as ♂ is opposite the chart (day) sect being a night planet, and in decline. So a sextile, usually fortunate, being a half-trine, is instead, unfortunate, it has "opposite effects".

[Chart 18 Fame, Wealth, Exile and Suicide]

Another example: ☉, ♄, ♀ in ♋, ☽ in ♌, ♂ in ♏, ♀ in ♎, ♄ in ♍, Ascendant in ♏<sup>1</sup>.

This person was famous and wealthy because the ☉ was attended by benefics and was found situated in the Lot of Fortune <♋> with its houseruler <♄>. But since /90P/ the co-rulers of the

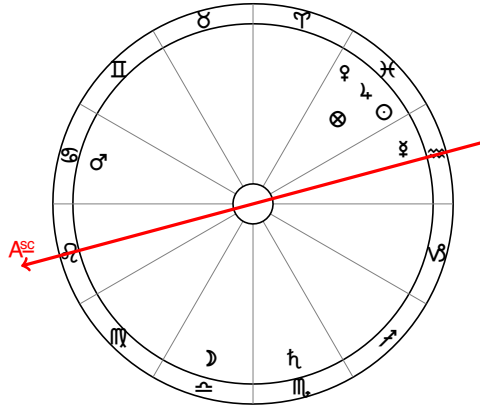


Figure 2.18: Chart 18 [II.26.4, GH L101,III]

same sect <♏, ☽> of the triangle <♋-♏-♍> were unfavorably situated, and the ruler <♄> of Daimon <♏> was turned away<sup>2</sup>, this person was exiled and committed suicide. In addition ♂ was in opposition to Accomplishment <♏>, and the ruler <♀> of the Exaltation <♎> did not have a suitable place, but was afflicted by ♄, which was in superior [□] aspect.

Therefore as I have already said, if most of the configurations or their rulers are found in suitable places, the native will be famous and spectacular in his living. If some <configurations and rulers> are favorably situated, others unfavorably, rank and fortune will be transitory.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L101) to approximately March 5, 101 AD (p.99).

<sup>2</sup> ♄ ♎? The ♎ (30°) and the ♎ (150°) aspects are often described as “turned away.”

## 2.27 Propitious and Impropitious Periods. The Length of Life Calculated from the Angles and the Signs Following the Angles (27K,28P)

The periods of good or bad fortune, of failure or success, must be determined by using the rising times of each sign or the cyclical period of each star.

When investigating the length of life, it is necessary to pay attention to the Ascendant and the ☽, or to the signs in which their rulers are located.

With respect to occupation and rank, it is necessary to pay attention to the Lot of Fortune, to Daimon, to the ☉, to the new or full moons, and to the Exaltation and its ruler.

The stars which are in the Ascendant (viz. the most important relationship), begin to rule over the first period of life <=first chronocratorship>. The stars at MC, at the Descendant, or at IC <rule over the subsequent periods>. If these places happen to be empty, then the stars just following the angles <rule>. If these too are empty, then the stars just preceding the angles <rule>. Even though they are not too strong, they will regulate affairs. /95K/ (The stars inclining away from <=just preceding> the Ascendant or MC make the allotment first, then the stars preceding the other angles. They cannot allot their entire rising times or periods, but only an amount proportional to the amount of the sign that they control.)

Those stars which are in their proper place and at angles or just following an angle, and which are found to be rising, especially those which have some relationship with the business of the nativity, whatever that may be—whenever they control the previously mentioned places, they allot the rising times of their signs and their



own periods, or the rising times and periods of the signs in which their rulers are located. (Likewise, when investigating the remaining Places and their masters, it is necessary to interpret the chronocratorships (e.g. concerning livelihood, brothers, parents, children, /**91P**/ etc.), the harmful and helpful stars, and whatever influence each <star> can produce. We mention this so that we do not write too often about the same matters. Their natures have been explained; we will remind you of them in the rest of this work.)

DELINEATION  
NOTE

It is necessary to allot first the minimum period of the ruler <of the sign> and of the star in conjunction, next the rising time of the sign <itself> or of the sign in which its ruler is located. In addition, examine the houserulers of the triangle, as we mentioned above. If both are well situated, the chronocratorship will be noteworthy and beneficial. If the indications are mixed, the results will be the same. If they are badly situated, the nativity will be irregular from beginning to end, involved in griefs and dangers. But if the Lot of Fortune or its ruler is configured in its proper place, it will give the nativity prosperity and a high rank suitable to the <nativity's> basis.

If two or more stars happen to be in the same sign, the period of each, distributed consecutively, will be operative, but the effects will result from a mixture of the two or three stars. Likewise the rising time of the sign, distributed consecutively with the period of the star in conjunction (or its ruler), will be operative.

If the chronocratorship derived from the rising times and the periods of benefic and malefic stars and signs coincide, then both good and bad together will happen at that particular time. /**96K**/

**2.28 Travel, from Hermippos (28K,29P)**

The difficult topic of travel has not been treated either by Petosiris or by the learned King in his treatises, except in this fashion: PETOSIRIS

If a malefic has a phase in this chronocratorship, it will cause travel and vexation for the nativity.

This is the truth, but they have nothing more than this to say about the Place of Foreign Lands.

The most amazing Abraham has shown us in his books other astrologers' explanations of the Place, as well as his own, since he found and proved additional <secrets/interpretations>, especially concerning expatriate nativities, with the following results: when ♂ beholds the setting luminaries or the Lot of Fortune, if that Lot just precedes MC, or <when ♂ beholds> the ♃ or most of the stars at IC, <it causes nativities to travel>.

If the ruler of Fortune is found in the Lot or Place of Foreign Lands or in opposition to it, or indeed if Fortune itself is located there in the Lot of Travel, and /92P/ if ♂ is in conjunction with the Lot or beholds that Place, this too causes nativities to travel. The same is true <if ♂ beholds> Fortune and Daimon.

**2.29 Travel (29K,30P)**

The Lot of Foreign Lands is found by determining the distance from **h** to **σ**, then counting that same distance from the Ascendant.

LOT OF  
FOREIGN  
LANDS

These circumstances make changeable nativities. The occasions and the times of travel for such nativities will be evident from the configurations outlined by Abraham. We will add the configurations observed by me personally; let no one reading this criticize us for adopting as our own the work and observations of others—as some do. We testify to the work of these men. Let us return to our subject.

To distribute the operative chronocratorship according to Abraham, i.e. those which are allotted starting with Daimon (for he does allot in this way, starting where the Lot of Daimon is located at birth): first look at the ruler of the sign where the Lot is found; then determine how many years /**97K**/ its shortest cycle happens to be and divide that amount among the 12 signs starting from Daimon itself, counting through the signs in order.

Next, when that cycle is completed, look at the ruler of the next sign after Daimon, determine how many years its cycle happens to be, and divide this <among the 12 signs>. Do the same in the successive signs, if the nativity has any years of life remaining. If the sign where the chronocratorship happens to be located has a place indicative of travel or the Lot of Travel either <in conjunction>, in opposition, or square, or if the stars (especially malefics not at an angle) which are in the signs that receive the allotment from the original sign, have more years than the <nativity's> basis, then they cause travel.

If the ruler of the sign which has received the allotment is not at an angle, is turned away from the sign, or is a

malefic, it causes travel. Even if it is at an angle, it will do the same.

If malefics have the allotment and are in the signs or are square with them, they cause travel.

If a benefic receives the allotment, but is found in opposition to the nativity, it will cause travel and movement for the native.

Again, whenever the rulers of the signs which have the chronocratorship or the distribution happen to be turned away from their signs, or are in opposition or in inferior aspect, or are not at an angle, these signs cause travel. Malefics in opposition, especially when beholding the luminaries in the places of the ☉ or ☿, /93P/ also cause travel.

If the ruler of the sign which has the chronocratorship is not at a center, or if it is in opposition to the sign, it makes movement or travel, provided that the Lot of Travel is located in the same place or in opposition or square with it. If it is in its proper place or is found in the squares, it does not cause travel.

♄ and ♀ do not cause distant travel, but rather swift returns.

If the two Lots, Fortune and Daimon, fall in the same sign, and if the Lot of Travel is in opposition or square with this sign, and if some malefic is in this place, the native will be involved in travel. Likewise if the Lot of Travel is in opposition to the star which is the chronocrator or which is in conjunction with the Lot of Fortune, and if the two Places, Fortune and Daimon, are in opposition, it is the cause of movement and makes travel for the nativity, especially <if these Lots are> not at centers. Even if they are at angles, /98K/ or else if the signs which have the allotments also have the Places of Foreign Lands or the Lot <of Travel> in opposition or square, they cause

travel for the nativity. Likewise if they are at IC, they make men fond of travel.

Again, if the Lot of Travel is located in the Ascendant at MC or just following MC—even if the nativity is not naturally inclined to travel or does not have the configurations mentioned previously—it still makes them travel not a lot, but a little, especially if no malefics are in opposition.

If the signs above the earth have the chronocratorship or its distribution (apart from the XII or the IX Places), they do not cause travel, provided that the Lot does not cause it and that no malefic is in opposition to or conjunction with the sign with no benefics associated.

If the signs below the earth have the chronocratorship, they do cause travel, especially when the Lot of Travel is located in the region below the earth. If the Lots of Fortune and Travel have malefics in conjunction or opposition, they cause frequent travel.

If the ruler of the Lot of Foreign Lands happens to be in opposition to the sign which has the chronocratorship, it will make the nativity travel.

If the Lot of Travel and the Lot of Fortune are together at IC, they cause much travel, especially when beheld or controlled by malefics or by a luminary. If it falls in one of the signs which has been assigned either the allotment of the chronocratorship or the monthly period, it causes motion, especially if it has a malefic in opposition or if the luminaries are similarly situated and at the Places above the earth which precede the angles. If the allotment is less or in opposition, /94P/ the nativity will have intermittent travel.

The stars in superior aspect to the moist signs under the earth which have the allotment cause travel, especially if these signs have the luminaries or malefics in conjunc-

tion. The configurations under discussion will be particularly influential if the current year <=chronocrator> of the Place has travel for the native or if it produces travelling nativities because of <the nativity's> fundamental nature.

Wherever the allotment of the overall chronocratorship or its distribution may be located, the ruler of that sign—whether at an angle or not, provided that no malefic is in opposition... and that the ruler is not in one of the signs of the luminaries, /99K/ departures will occur. If they have them at or just preceding an angle, they cause foreign departures.

Malefics in conjunction with signs that just precede an angle, or that have the chronocratorship or its distributions, cause travel, and the year has special movement.

Whenever the star which has the chronocratorship or the ruler of the Place of Foreign Lands is found to be in the Place or Lot of Foreign Lands, it causes travel, especially if a malefic is square or opposed to the Unlit Place. Likewise if the sign which has the allotment of the chronocratorship is in opposition to the Lot of Travel, especially when it just precedes an angle, it causes travel. If the allotments of the chronocratorship just precede an angle and if the signs do not have <the Lot of Travel?> in opposition or in superior aspect, they do not cause travel; rather the native will nervously anticipate travel and will have unfulfilled intentions to travel.

Whenever a benefic is in opposition or in superior aspect with malefics which have the chronocratorships or their allotments, or if the benefic is with <such a malefic> at IC and a travelling “year” occurs, they make delays and obstacles for departures occur.

If Fortune falls in the Place of Foreign Lands, or if the Lots are in opposition, with a malefic in conjunction or opposition, travel occurs, provided that no benefic is

joined to any of them or in opposition. If the ruler of Foreign Lands is in opposition to it or to them <?>, with no benefics in aspect, and if Mars is in opposition to the Lot of Fortune or is located in the Lot of Foreign Lands, or is situated in one of them, this makes the native travel extensively. On the other hand, ♂ as ruler of both Lots, even though turned away from the “signs” that cause travel or in moist signs, causes traveling nativities.

If Mars is turned away from the Lot <of Fortune> or is in the Lot of Foreign Lands, and it is the ruler of neither Lot, it does not cause travel, but it will cause the native to live mostly in his homeland, /95P/ experiencing only the threat of travel. Likewise if the Lots have benefics in conjunction, they do not make men who are subject to travel, but instead, those who rarely travel.

For any nativity it is possible to find configurations that do not <?> easily bring travel, because most nativities are subject to travel, some constantly and everywhere, others rarely /100K/ and briefly, because in some <nativities>, the configurations which cause travel are in the majority, in others they are not. Therefore some men become much travelled, others are rarely, only briefly, subject to travel. Concerning those people who have a few configurations indicating travel: if in the original horoscope or in a later recasting, the Lots of Travel and Fortune are located near benefics, they do not cause departures, especially if the year has no impulse toward travel. if the nativity has the configurations I mentioned above, they do cause travel.

If the Lot of Travel is turned away from Fortune, especially if one of the Lots has a benefic in conjunction, it will make men spend most of their lives in their homeland, rather than be subject to travel.

Mars turned away from the Lot of Foreign Lands causes short trips. The Lot of Fortune does not cause

travel if it has benefic stars in conjunction and if they are above the earth.

If the Lot of Fortune is at MC and is turned away from the Lot of Travel, and if it does not have a malefic or a luminary in opposition, it causes nativities to stay in their homeland rather than to travel. If the two Lots are in conjunction and in the Place just preceding MC, separated from <♂> and having no malefic in opposition or conjunction in another sign, the nativity does not readily travel. But if the two Lots have malefics in conjunction or opposition, they cause nativities to be subject to travel, especially when the Lots are in moist signs.

The Lot of Fortune, when well situated, having neither malefics in superior aspect nor the luminaries nor the Lot of Travel (especially when ♂ is turned away from the two Lots), does not cause travel. Even if the native wants to travel, he does not go. If ♄ transits these “signs,” he prevents departures.

The native will have remarkable travels if the year falls just before an angle (Ascendant) and in moist signs, especially if a benefic is not in conjunction (either in transit or at the nativity). If the ruler of the chronocratorship transmits the year to the ruler of the Lot of Travel, especially if a malefic beholds it, or vice-versa if the ruler of the Lot <transmits> the year to the ruler of the chronocratorship, <it causes travel>...



## 2.30 The Predecease of Parents, with Examples (30K,31P)

**/101K;96P/** Some astrologers have explained the topic of the predecease of parents in one way, others in another way. We have tested these methods and have found the following. Since the Sun indicates the father (as does Saturn in the second rank), the most accurate <procedure>, for night and day births, is to examine <which of these two> stars is associated with the ☿, i.e. beheld by the ☿, in conjunction with the ☿, or in the <☿'s> house or triangle. That star assumes the Father's Place. ♀ and the ☿ assume the Mother's Place, using the same procedure.

ASSOCIATED  
PLANETS

So for each nativity it will be necessary to determine which star is beheld by malefics or which star is unfavorably situated, whether ☉, ☿, ♀, or ♃ (although the latter is already the destroyer of the father). If the ☉ assumes the Father's Place and is beheld by ♂ or ♃ with no benefics in aspect, the forecast of predecease will apply to the father. If the same is true of the ☿ or ♀, the forecast will apply to the mother. If both the luminaries or ♀ are beheld by malefics, the star unfavorably situated or in another's sect will indicate the predecease.

Another method: the Father's Lot in a masculine sign or its ruler with a malefic in aspect indicates the father's predecease. Likewise the same thing happens with respect to the Mother's Lot, especially if one knows for certain that the father is alive.

Another method: determine the number of days from the rising of Sirius to the birth date. Divide this figure by 12 and count the remainder (less than 12) from the ☿'s position, giving one to each sign. If the count stops at a masculine sign, the father will predecease; if at a feminine sign, the mother will predecease. For example, take the nativity cited below, Mechir 13: from the rising of Sirius

on Epiphi 25 to Mechir 13 are 203 days. Divide this by 12, and the remainder is 11. Count this from the ♃ in ♎ and stop in ♊, a feminine sign. ♂ is also in that sign. The mother will die first.

An example: ☉, ☿ in ♊, ♃ in ♎, ♅ in ♋, ♄ in ♌, ♀ in ♍, ♂, Ascendant in ♊<sup>1</sup>.

For night births, ♅ is associated /102K/ with the ♃ because it is found in ♋ <same triangle> and is the house-ruler of the ☉. ♅ assumes the Father's Lot/Place and was beheld by ♄, with ♀

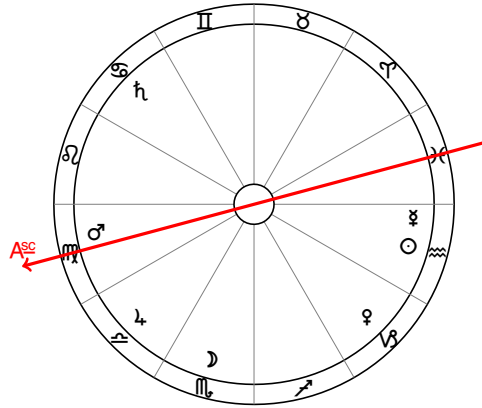


Figure 2.19: Chart 19 [II.30.1, GH L120]

/97P/ in Good Daimon. The ♃ and ♀, which are beheld by two malefics, indicated the predecease of the mother.

Another method: if the ☉ is in superior aspect with the ♃, the mother will predecease; if the ♃ is in superior aspect with the ☉, the father will predecease. If neither of these is superior to the other and if they are unconfigured, I examine ♅ and ♀. If these <are unconfigured>, I examine ♅ and the ♃.

If the ☉ is in superior aspect, but ♀ is between, ♀ will intercept the superior aspect<sup>2</sup>. Then look to see if ♅ is in inferior aspect with ♀, and if so there will be the

ASPECT  
INTERCEPT

<sup>1</sup>Greek Horoscopes dates the chart (L120) to approximately February 8, 120AD (p.116)

<sup>2</sup>Intercepted aspects often appear as a Horary technique.

premature decease of the father—or the reverse, if ♀ is inferior to Saturn.

If the star that intercepts the stars of superior aspect has itself a superior influence, the intercepting stars will have the ability to bring about their own effects. (The superior aspecting happens in the same signs or in those in opposition. In general a star which heads for/aims at another <from the right> is in superior aspect to the other; the same is true of a star which has a correspondingly <?> superior power.)

SUPERIOR  
ASPECT

### 2.31 [Another Method.] About Parents, from Timaios (31K,32P)

#### *[Operative Planets, Signs]*

Prediction about fathers are done as follows: for day births, the ☉, the sign where the ☉ is located, the ruler of the sign where ♄ is located, and the sign itself which holds ♄, all are operative

Predictions about the mother are made as follows: <for night births>, from the ♃'s sign (=the sign where the ♃ is located) and the houseruler of the ♃; for day births, from ♀ and the sign where ♀ is located.

Whenever these operative stars are found in their own sects, in their own houses, in their own exaltations, with any benefic in superior aspect (or in fact in aspect at all), and when they do not precede an angle or are not afflicted by any malefic in the place where they rejoice, then these stars indicate that the parents' affairs will be famous, distinguished, and illustrious.

If the star that should indicate parents' affairs has any malefics in aspect, either by projection of rays or by superior aspect, or if it is found in a place where it does not rejoice, it will indicate lowly and humble parents.

/103K/ The houserulers, along with the specifically indicative star, will also indicate good or bad concerning parents according to the position and aspect of the other stars. If the star indicative of parents' affairs or its houseruler is unfavorably situated in its place or is afflicted by any harmful aspect—because it is found to be setting under the rays of the sun, or because it is in <the XII Place of> Bad Daimon, or because the ruler and the afflicted indicative star is not operative in the Place of Parents but is /98P/ turned away—if this is the case, it will indicate lowly, humble, and base parents.

If in addition to being inoperative, these stars are afflicted by having malefics in aspect on the right or in conjunction, this will indicate that the parents are slaves or subjugated people. If however the star indicative of parents just precedes an angle or is afflicted in some other way, but the house ruler is favorably situated and operative... in the Place of Parents, having an indicative star operative in a place not afflicted by any malefic, they indicate harm, punishment, doom, or disaster for the parents.

♄ at MC and ♄ at IC indicate the father to be a slave, a subjugated person, or an exile, especially when the sun is afflicted.

The Lot of the Father is found as follows: for day births determine the distance from the ☉ to ♄ and count this distance from the Ascendant. (Some determine the ☉ to ♄ and count from the Ascendant<sup>1</sup> For night births, determine the distance from ♀ to the ☾ and count this distance from the Ascendant.

LOT OF THE  
FATHER

The Lot of Parents is found as follows... Concerning a stepfather, take the point directly opposite the Lot. If the ruler of the Lot of the Father happens to be at the point in opposition or if the ruler of the point in opposition happens to be at the Lot, this indicates a stepfather. Likewise if the <ruler of> the Lot of the Mother is found in opposition and the ruler of the point in opposition to the Lot of the Mother is found at the Lot of the Mother, this will correspondingly indicate a stepmother.

LOT OF  
PARENTS

---

<sup>1</sup>Test using the “operative” planet for the father.

### 2.32 The Loss of Parents (32K,33P)

♂ in conjunction with the ☉ and ☐ with ♄ causes bereavement.

♄ and ♂ configured with ♀, if ♄ is not in aspect on the right, likewise make orphans.

♄ setting with ♄ makes orphans.

The ♃ in a bicorporeal sign and with ♄ in aspect indicates children with two fathers.

If ♀ is in the Ascendant, /104K/ and if the ♃ is at IC, in the house of ♂, and if ♄ is in unfavorable aspect and out of its own house—this too will make children who have two fathers.

The character of the parents can be determined from the stars which are configured together. ♄ will show them to be surly, envious, depraved, suspicious, foul, involved in secret passions, ugly, spending their money on religious matters, friends of great lords.

♄ will show them to be lovers of the good, illustrious, generous, frank and open, cheerful.

♂ will show them to be bold, /99P/ hot tempered, rash, insolent, reckless, restless, risking all, drunkards, toilsome. (Concerning mothers: if ♂ as houseruler overpowers the ♃ or ♀, it shows the mother to be rough, a whore, troubled acutely by bleeding or consumption, if no benefic in aspect relieves the situation.)

♀ in aspect with the luminaries shows the parents to be cheerful, musical, fond of good cheer, affectionate, religious.

♂ shows them to be joiners, sociable and thrifty, sharers in some account or skill, lying most of the time and wronging their inferiors.

<When making this determination about parents> it is necessary to consider the places <of the stars> as well: the ☉ in a masculine sign and having a masculine star in aspect shows the father to be noble; in a feminine sign and having the ☽ in aspect shows him to be slack and effeminate.

The ☉ in a feminine sign and having ♄ or ♀ in aspect shows the father to be not unharmed and not without a bad reputation.

The ☽ in a feminine sign and having feminine stars in aspect shows the mother to be dictatorial and wrathful; in a masculine sign and with masculine stars in aspect, it shows the mother to be hot-tempered and uncontrollable; in a feminine sign and having ♃ in aspect, it shows the mother to be mild and kindly.

### 2.33 The Separation of Parents (33K,34P)

♂ and ♀, when intercepting the luminaries or when situated between the <signs> which contain the luminaries, or between their rays, separate parents.

ASPECT  
INTERCEPT

Whenever one of the illuminators is in its sect but is unfavorably located, and the other is not in its sect and is malefic relative to the other, this separates parents.

♀ in conjunction with the ☉, if the ☿ is estranged, separates parents.

If the ruler of the Ascendant is operative, the Ascendant is afflicted, and its co-houseruler /105K/ is unfavorably situated, the parents will be separated, the native himself will be much disturbed and unfortunate, and his parents' property will be reduced.

Parents will be in harmony whenever the luminaries and their houserulers are in harmony with each other. Whenever the houseruler of the ☉ is in harmony with the ☿, and the houseruler of the ☿ with the ☉, the parents will be in harmony.

/100P/ When one of the illuminators is not in its own sect, is nullified by a malefic or is in inferior aspect, and is in either conjunction with or opposition to the malefic, then <the parent corresponding to> the luminary which sets first or to the luminary whose place is more unfavorably situated will die first.

If the ☿ is waxing, and if the nativity is at the full moon, and if some malefic beholds the first full moon, and if this full moon happens in a feminine sign, the mother will die first; if it happens in a masculine sign, the father will die first.

If the nativity is at the full, moon, the next new moon must be examined: if it happens in a feminine sign with



a malefic beholding, then the mother will die first; if in a masculine sign, then the father will die first.

If the Sun is below the earth, in most cases the father will die abroad.

If Jupiter has a malefic in aspect, and if it <♄> just precedes with the malefic just following, this indicates that the father will die abroad.

If Saturn is just leaving an angle, and if it is just approaching ♂, and if either of them is in aspect with ♄ or the ☉, the father will die abroad.

For day births, if the Moon is afflicted above the earth or just precedes an angle with a malefic approaching, or if ♀ is afflicted in the same ways, the mother will die first.

If the houseruler of the Sun and the Sun itself do not behold the Ascendant, the father will die abroad.

If the Sun is afflicted by a malefic and ♄ is in inferior aspect, the father will die violently.

If only Saturn afflicts the previously mentioned stars, the cause of the violent death will be suffocation, dropsy, fluxes, chills, poisoning, shipwreck, or old matters.

If only Mars afflicts them, the cause will be sword slashes, stings, bloody wounds, consumption, miscarriages, burns, or falls.

If both malefics afflict the ☉ and ♄, the violence of the death will be worse in proportion to the natural blending of each star's inclination.

**2.34 Free and Slave Nativities (34K,35P)**

Differences in birth, i.e. servile and noble nativities, are determined from the phases of the nativity.

If /**106K**/ the sign of the phase or the ruler of that sign is unfavorably situated or is beheld by malefics, the native will be base. Even if he attains high rank and a position of trust, he will be ruined.

If the phase is found at an angle, and its ruler has benefics in aspect, the native will become noble and famous.

If the place <of the phase> is in operative signs, but its ruler is unfavorably situated or beheld by malefics, /**101P**/ then the native is free-born and begins life well, but he later falls into reversals, servitude, and want.

If the ruler is found in operative signs, but the place itself is unfavorably situated, the native will fare very ill in his first years in servile roles and will be unsettled, but later he will live easily, be elevated, and gain freedom, success, and a family <name>, especially if benefics incline.

If the place <of the phase> and its ruler are unfavorably situated and both are beheld by malefics, the native will be exposed as an infant, or will become a captive and experience servitude. If under these conditions, benefics come close or are in coaspect, the native will be released from servitude after the chronocratorships of the malefics and will become a man of property.

If the place is guarded by malefics, but its ruler by benefics, the native, although of servile birth, will be raised as a free-born man, or will rise by being adopted or taken in <to be reared>. If the opposite is true, i.e. the place is guarded by benefics and the ruler by malefics, the native, although freeborn, will be reduced to slavery

or will hand himself over, in middle age, into slavery for lack of food or as a means of gaining a position and occupation.

### 2.35 The Eleven Phases of the Moon and The Influence of Their Effects (35K,36P)

According to the physicists' reasoning, there are seven phases of the Moon, but we find eleven listed elsewhere:

1. New moon;
2. First visibility;
3. Next the crescent ☾, 45° from the ☉;
4. Next the quarter ☾ at 90°;
5. Next the gibbous ☾ at 135°;
6. Next the full ☾ at 180°;
7. Next the second gibbous phase when it is 45° from full, i.e. 225° <from the ☉>;
8. Next the second quarter at 270°;
9. Next the second crescent at 315°<sup>1</sup>;
10. Final visibility at 360°;
11. There is another phase as well, when it first begins to wane.

***[What Each Phase Indicates and What Effects It Has]***

***/107K/***<sup>2</sup>

We will append how the preceding phases are to be taken in casting horoscopes and to which god they belong.

---

<sup>1</sup>Balsamic ☾.

<sup>2</sup>Promoted the first line of this paragraph into the above subsection.

The new moon is indicative of rank and power, of kingly and despotic dispositions, of all public business concerning cities, of parents, /102P/ marriages, religion, and of all universal, cosmic matters. The rulers of the new moon, of the latitude, and of the motion are indicative of the same things.

The first visibility of the ☾ (which is also called its “light”) and its ruler are indicative of life, occupation, and future wealth; in addition, it strengthens the matters influences by the n[e]w ☾. The ruler of the “light” indicates the overall influences in the same way that the monthly cycles and the universal cycles are observed by means of the first visibility. ☿ adds its influence until day 4 of the ☾’s motion.

The crescent formation is indicative of nurture and expectations in life, of wives and mothers. ☿ adds its influence until day 8.

The quarter formation is indicative of injuries, diseases, and violent accidents; also of children, status, and good things to come. ♀ is configured with the ☾ until day 12.

The gibbous phase is indicative of prosperity, future success, travel, and the affinity of relatives. The ☼ works with the moon until day 14.

The full moon is indicative of fame and infamy, of travel and violent events, of those who fall from preeminence as well as those who rise from a humble state, of affinities, passions, political opposition, and the affinity of parents. This phase has the color of the sign in the Descendant.

The first ruler of the waning of the light is indicative of the diminishing of resources, of the chilling of occupations, of those who grow humble and lowly, and of sudden

falls. This phase has the same influence as the sign which just follows the Descendant. **♂** is its ruler until day 21.

The second gibbous phase is indicative of travel abroad, of great activities, and of prosperity. It has the same influence as <the IX Place of> the God. **♄** is its ruler to day 25 of the **♌**.

The second quarter phase is indicative of old affairs, of chronic diseases, and of children. /**108K**/ It has the same influence as. . . **♄** is its ruler to day 30.

The ruler of the last crescent is indicative of a wife's death, of unemployment or robbery.

Finally, the last visibility is indicative of chains, imprisonment, secrets, condemnation, and infamy.

The preceding was the arrangement of the **♌**'s phases, their relationships with the five gods and the sun in the. . . angles.

### ⟨A personal comment⟩

<sup>1</sup>Since I wished to set out brief explanations of these matters, and since I deprecate all long-winded, mythological mystification, I have published these chapters, most particularly for those who are vitally interested in these matters, those who have spent much time in their studies, and who, because of this, can make an equal contribution from their own insights. /**103P**/ I believe that I have persuaded these students, in what I have written and will write, to put aside the hard-to-believe and easily-ridiculed parts of our art, to convict our opponents of folly and mad raving, and to display the immortal foreknowledge which is <now> in danger.

Eager scholars, exercised in the mathematical, introductory disciplines by other men, will win the victory-

---

<sup>1</sup>Subsection title inserted by Prof. Riley.

prize of glory with the help of this treatise—although they themselves are not unfamiliar with the mysteries of constructing and arranging astronomical tables<sup>1</sup> (a subject which I did not want to go into and then have to repeat). Even if we seem to be <merely> compiling and explaining the doctrines of the old astrologers, <even> for this we will win the prize of merit from our readers, because of the precision, clarity, and instructiveness of their methods.

Others have employed long-winded, elaborate schemes, and although thinking that they have explained, have really overturned their existing reputation for foreknowledge. Trying to exercise a pure Hellenic style in their writings, they have revealed a thoroughly barbarian mind. One might say that they act like the Sirens, who attracted sailors with their treacherous, but harmonious, voices and with the music of instruments and of baneful song, then destroyed them on the reefs of the deep. This is what some men suffer and have suffered, men who fall in with the sects of those <other astrologers>: beguiled from the start by their spectacular words and their spells, they have become lost in a trackless wilderness, and finding no exit, they perish not only in the depths, but even in a maze. Some who think they have escaped /109K/ this danger fall into tormenting, soul-wearying agony and come to a bitter end. If someone uses Odysseus' scheme and sails past these "Sirens," he will bequeath <to others> knowledge sanctified by his life, knowledge with which he can live and associate always, enjoying his span of days, while repelling the malignant opinions of his opponents as if by magic. So then, saying farewell to these men, we will reach the glory which lies before us.

---

<sup>1</sup>A reference to Ptolemy?

**2.36 Injuries and Diseases, with Examples In Each Sign: What Injuries and Diseases are Caused by Aries and the Succeeding Signs (36K,37P)**

Since the old astrologers have written about the topic of injuries very obscurely, we will lucidly explain it. Some astrologers, with reference to the underlying parts of the body and the mind, for each nativity /104P/ have <assigned> the limbs starting with the Lot of Fortune and with Daimon, and they make their forecasts concerning injuries and diseases with reference to the proximity of malefics. For example:

Sign	Part Affected	Sign	Part Affected
The Lot of Fortune	breast	Sign 7	knees
Sign 2	flanks	Sign 8	calves
Sign 3	belly	Sign 9	feet
Sign 4	groin	Sign 10	head
Sign 5	genitals	Sign 11	face, neck
Sign 6	thighs	Sign 12	arms, shoulders

Diseases are counted from Daimon:

Sign	Part Affected	Sign	Part Affected
Daimon	heart	Sign 7	bladder
Sign 2	stomach	Sign 8	bowels
Sign 3	kidney, sperm ducts	Sign 9	brain, teeth, ears
Sign 4	colon	Sign 10	gullet
Sign 5	liver	Sign 11	tongue
Sign 6	intestines	Sign 12	stomach

This becomes obvious if one begins with ♈ and ♉, then goes in order, since the ♋ <♊> is the Fortune of



the Universe, and the ☉ <♁> is Mind and Divinity.

### *[Indications from Signs]*

That is what the earlier astrologers stated. The following seems more accurate in our experience:


Aries is indicative of the head in general, the sensory faculties, and the eyesight. In the point now at issue, ♈ causes headaches, dimming of vision, strokes, deafness, blindness, leprosy, lichenous scaliness of the skin, loss of hair, mange, baldness, stupor, festering sores, sudden attacks of panting, arthritic joints, tumors, plus whatever syndromes occur of the sensory faculties, the ears, and the teeth.


Taurus is indicative of the neck, face, gullet, eyebrows, and nose. This sign causes hunchback because of its round-shouldered appearance and lameness because of its bent hoof; ♉ also pains and dangerous crises of the eyes and blindness because of the Pleiades. This is a sneaky and degraded sign. It causes fits, excision of the uvula, carbuncles, goiter, choking, as well as injuries, diseases, and pains of the nostrils, falls from high places or from animals, fractures of the limbs, throat tumors, mutilation, sciatica, abscesses.


Gemini is indicative of shoulders, arms, hands, fingers, joints, sinews, strength, courage, change, the birth of women, speech, mouth, blood vessels, the voice. When afflicted, ♊ causes injuries to these parts; it also brings attacks of bandits and enemies accompanied by wounds, cuts, and loss of limbs. It brings jaundice and falls from high places.


Cancer is indicative of the chest, stomach, breasts, spleen, mouth, the hidden parts, the dimming of vision and blindness because of the nebula <in ♋>. Under this sign the following occur: leprosy, lichenous scali-


ness of the skin and of the face, strokes, dropsy arising from complaints of the spleen, staggering gait, bilious syndromes, /**105P**/ lameness, jaundice, piebald skin, buck teeth, crossed eyes, loss of eyelashes, diseased eyelids, twisted spines, injuries from aquatic animals, birthmarks and moles around the eyes, coughs bringing up blood, jaundice, pleurisy, and lung ailments.

Leo is indicative of the flanks, the loin, the heart,  courage, vision, sinews. Under this sign the following occur: lunacy or superstitious terrors, convulsions/wounds caused by violence or vice, or resulting from bravery or asceticism, loss of limbs, amputation, injury to the eyes. It is also the cause of foul odors. It also causes ugliness, amputations, fractures, falls from high places or from animals, bites from wild beasts, and injuries from buildings collapsing and from burns, as well as depression, cancer, and homosexuality.


Virgo is indicative of the belly, the internal organs,  and the internal reproductive organs. It causes attacks of passion; with respect to intercourse, it makes people who are either weak, or strong and chaste. (So that we may not seem too lengthy—the injuries and diseases caused by a sign or star are obvious from the nature of the sign and the star.) Virgo causes orthopnoea, hernia, superstitious terrors; in women it causes hysterical syndromes and complaints of the womb.


Libra is indicative of the hips, buttocks, the colon,  the genitals, the hind parts. This sign causes paralysis, hernia, rupture, dysentery, dropsy, kidney stones.


Scorpio is indicative of the genitals and the rump.  Because of its sting, it causes dimming of vision, blindness, weak eyesight, kidney stones, strangury, recurrent illness, hernia/promiscuity <?>, fistula.

Sagittarius is indicative of the thighs /**111K**/ and  the groin. Under this sign occur piebald skin with birth-

marks, baldness, weak vision, eyestrain or blindness, bad breath, gout. It also causes falls from high places or from beasts, the loss of limbs and injuries from wild animals, and births with extra limbs.

Capricorn is indicative of the knees, the sinews, and internal and external sprains and strains because of its mysterious character. It causes weak vision and blindness because of its spiny vertebrae. It causes insanity, troubles from moist things; also delirium, incestuous women, lesbians and nymphomaniacs, banditry, and vice. 

Aquarius is indicative of the legs, calves, sinews, and joints. It causes elephantiasis, jaundice, a sallow color, lameness, dropsy, insanity, castration, fractures, and sometimes strangury. 

Pisces is indicative of the feet, the sinews, and the toes. Under it occur arthritis, lichenous scaliness of the skin and leprosy, and people who are on the way down, reviled and suffering many injuries.  causes births with extra limbs, halting speech, deafness, mange, wounds from aquatic beasts, or affliction from moist syndromes.

All this being given, it will be necessary to examine each nativity closely to see /**106P**/ in which sign the Lot of Fortune is located, for the nature of the sign will indicate the injury. The ruler of the Lot of Fortune will be particularly indicative, along with the sign in which it is located.

Likewise examine Daimon and its ruler to see in which sign they are located, for these will clarify <the nature of> the disease.

The stars in the Place of Occupation <sup>1</sup> must be examined by you in the same way. Injuries and diseases will be quite violent if malefics are in conjunction or in aspect

---

<sup>1</sup>?? 10th?

with these places or their houserulers. The native will be hale and healthy whenever the places and their rulers are favorably situated and not afflicted.

Each star has its own effect according to its allotted nature: if—to take a hypothetical example—the Lot is in Aries and its ruler, ♂, is also there (since ♂ rules ♈ and ♎), you can foretell an injury to the head and the genitals or the rump. Whatever the star should cause, judging from its nature, it will cause.

Occasionally, if both places are afflicted, injuries and diseases occur, especially when malefics rule or are in aspect.

*[Examples]**[Chart 20: Blind, gouty]*

For example—so that we will not seem to talk in riddles—<take the following nativity>: ☉, ♄, ♂ in ♋, ☾, Ascendant in ♎, ♃ in ♂, ♀ in ♊, the Lot of Fortune <in ♋>, the ruler of Fortune, ♃, in ♂<sup>1</sup>.

The native was blind on account of the Pleiades and because of the malefic ♃, and he had unmentionable /112K/ vices because of both signs <♋, ♂>. In addition, ♄, the ruler of Daimon (in ♋), was found in ♋. From these configurations it was clear that he had gout. The Lot and its ruler was sufficient to reveal the disease and the injury.

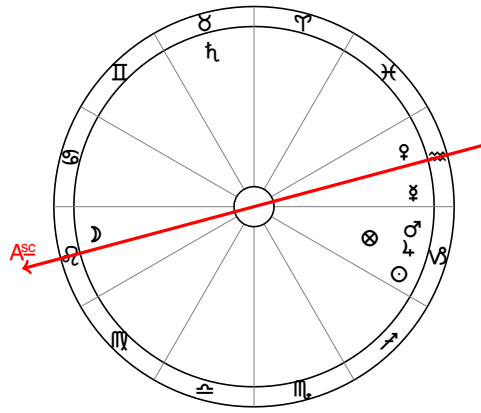


Figure 2.20: Chart 20 [IL.36.1, GH L87]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L87) to approximately January 9, 87 AD (p.95)

[Chart 21: Bald, blind]

Another example: ☉, ♀, ♂ in ♈, ☽ in ♎, ♄ in ♌, ♀ in ♍, Ascendant in ♏, the Lot in ♎.<sup>1</sup>

The genitals were injured because the ruler of ♎ <♂> was in ♈. The native was bald and blind on account of <♈> arrow. ♄, the ruler of Daimon <♏>, was found in <the IX Place of> the God and caused him to recover his sight with the help of the god. He became a seer.

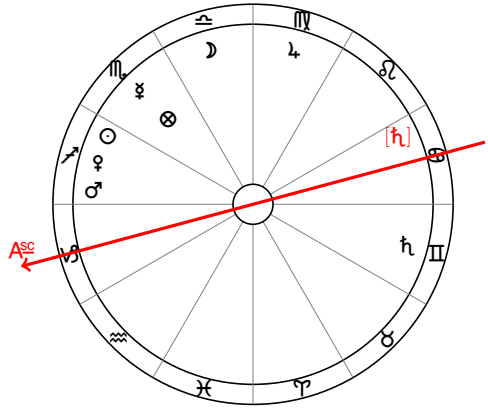


Figure 2.21: Chart 21 [II.36.2, GH L118]

[General Delineation Notes]

So we see that benefics unfavorably situated are perverted and lead to infirmities and diseases, while malefics favorably situated cause no infirmities, just temporary and intermittent bouts of illness.

BENEFIC AS  
MALEFIC

If the rulers of the Lot of Fortune or of Daimon happen to be in <the IX Place of> the God or <the III Place of> the Goddess and are intercepted or aspected by malefics, they cause men to be struck dumb, to be raving lunatics, or to be seers. As the Compiler says, and most reasonably too: “If the star which indicates infirmity is in a

INTERCEP-  
TION

<sup>1</sup>Greek Horoscopes dates the chart (L118) to approximately November 26, 118 AD (p.114). This chart is also used as an example in Book VII, sections 2 and 5.

Potent Place and /107P/ is beheld by a malefic, the disease which befalls will be incurable and untreatable. If a benefic is in conjunction or in aspect with the Harmful Place, the native will be cured by medicine or by the help of a god." (By "Potent Place" he means the angles and the two <Places> which rise just after <the angles>, especially when the malefics which hold <the rulership> are in these places.)

POTENT  
PLACE

It is necessary to scrutinize accurately the degree-position of the Lots, because often a rough calculation puts the Lot in one sign, but an exact calculation puts it in another. This frequently happens as a result of the positions of the luminaries or of the Ascendant, if they are found either at the beginning or the end of a sign.

Generally speaking, the ☉, the ☿, ♃, and ♄, when in opposition or when rising just after <another star>, bring injuries to the eyes and onsets of other disease, insanity, or strokes.

The ☉ rising just after ☿ or located in the same sign causes coughing or spitting blood and heart trouble, as well as injuries to the vision.

♃ and ☿ at IC either together or alone make men of poor vision and subject to sudden fits, men who see visions of the gods or the dead, men who are initiated into secret, mystic lore. The same stars, if they are in opposition or in superior aspect with the new or full moon, or if the individually behold the ☿ while the moon is passing out of a given phase, /113K/ cause lunacy, possession, fits, and can strike men dumb.

*[Chart 22: Tender feet, a lunatic]*

For example: ☉, ♄ in ♊, ☽ in ♋, ♃ in ♌, ♂ in ♍, ♀, ☿ in ♎, Ascendant in ♏, the Lot of Fortune in ♋, Daimon in ♏<sup>1</sup>.

♄ was in opposition to Daimon, which influences the intellectual and spiritual qualities, and ♄ beheld the full moon, which was the immediately preceding phase. The ruler of the Lot of Fortune <♂> was in opposition to the Ascendant. The native had an injury in the fated places, tender feet, and—most significantly—he was a lunatic.

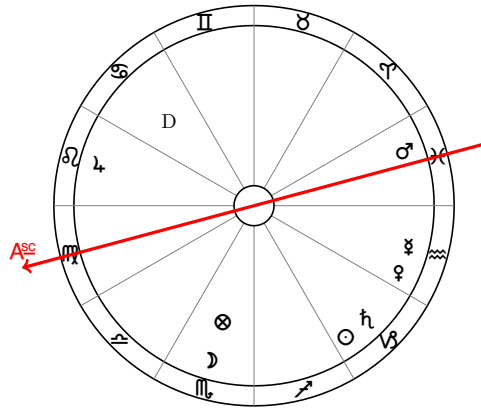


Figure 2.22: Chart 22 [IL.36.3, GH L106]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L106) to approximately January 16, 106 AD (p.103).



*[Chart 23: Visions]*

Another example: ☉ in ♈, ☽ in ♎, ♄ in ♏, ♀ in ♏, ☿ in ♏, ♀ in ♏, Ascendant in ♏, the Lot of Fortune in ♏<sup>1</sup>.

♂ is there, and ♄ in superior aspect. The ☉, found in the places of ♄, is indicative of things the ruler of the sinews. Since ♄ was found at IC, the native had visions of the gods and of the dead.

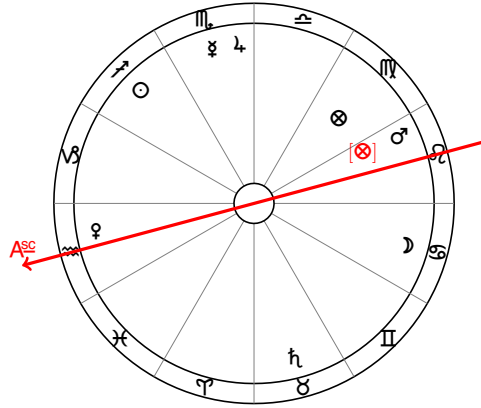


Figure 2.23: Chart 23 [II.36.4, GH L85]

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L85) to approximately November 24, 85 AD (p.94).

*[Chart 24: Homosexual]*

Another example: ☉ in ♊, ☽ in ♏, ♄ in ♏, ♀ in ♏, /108P/ Ascendant in ♏, ♂ in ♏, ♀ in ♏, ♀ in ♏, the Lot of Fortune in ♏, Daimon in ♏.<sup>1</sup>

Malefics were in opposition to the Lots. The native was homosexual and had unmentionable vices, because ♏ is a lewd sign and its ruler <♄> was in ♏, a pathic sign. ♏ also indicates this kind of vice.

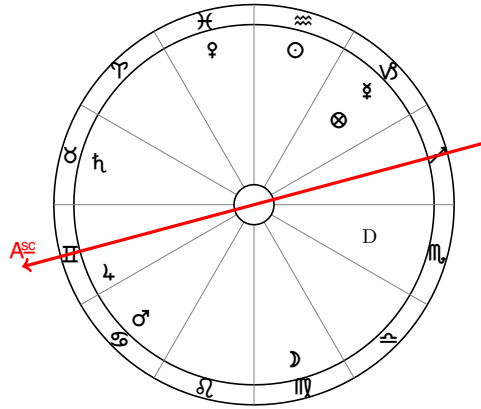


Figure 2.24: Chart 24 [IL.36.5, GH L116]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L116) to approximately January 21, 116 AD (p.112).

*[Chart 25: Castration]*

Another example: ☉, ♀ in ♈, ☽ in ♋, ♄ in ♌, ♀ in ♍, ♃ in ♎, ♅ in ♏, ☿ in ♐, ♁ in ♑, Ascendant in ♒, the Lot of Fortune in ♒, Daimon in ♎<sup>1</sup>.

♄ located in this sign caused him to be castrated. The ruler <of ♎>, ♁, was in ♑, which indicated the genitals, and the ☉ in ♈ indicated the region of the groin.....Malefics entering Daimon or in opposition <to Daimon> cause insanity and possession...

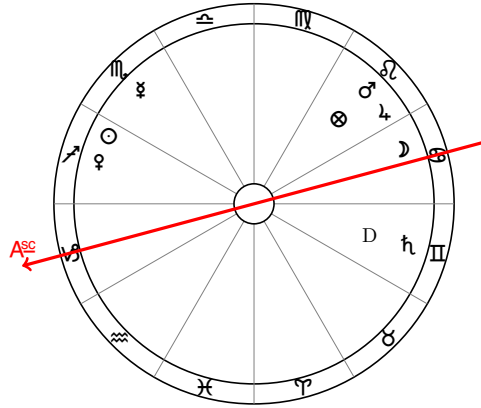


Figure 2.25: Chart 25 [IL.36.6, GH L117]

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L117) to approximately November 30, 117 AD (p.114)

*[Chart 26: Blind]*

Another example: ☉, ☽, ♀, Ascendant in ♍, ♏ in ♈, ♌ in ♉, ♂ in ♊, ♀ in ♋, the Lots in ♍<sup>1</sup>.

The native was blind because of <♍'s> sting. In addition ♏ was in superior aspect to the new ☽ <in ♍> and to the luminaries, and the ruler <of ♍>, ♂, was unfavorably situated.

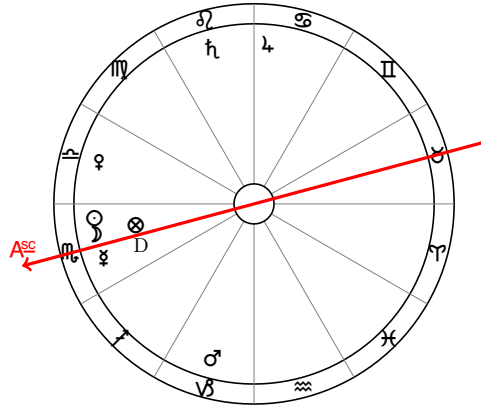


Figure 2.26: Chart 26 [II.36.7, GH L92]

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L92) to approximately November 17, 92 AD (p.97)

[Chart 27: *Leprosy, mange* ]

/114K/ Another example: ☉, ☿ in ♈, ♀ in ♉, ♄ in ♊, ♃ in ♋, Ascendant in ♌, the Lot of Fortune in ♈. Its ruler, ♄, was in ♉ with ♅<sup>1</sup>.

The native had mange on the head and leprosy and lichenous scalliness of the skin because the ruler <♄> of Daimon <in ♌> was in ♉.

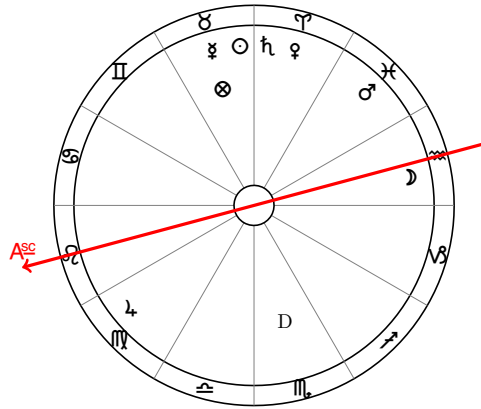


Figure 2.27: Chart 27 [II.36.8, GH L83]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L83) to approximately April 28, 83 AD (see also section 21.4) (p.93)

*[Chart 28: Abnormally short arms ]*

Another example: ☉, ♂ in ♋, ♃ in ♏, ♄ in ♎, ♀ in ♌, ♁ in ♌, ♀, Ascendant in ♎, the Lot of Fortune in ♎ with its ruler ♄ in ♌<sup>1</sup>.

Furthermore Daimon was in ♏ and its ruler <☉> was in ♋. The native had abnormally short arms.

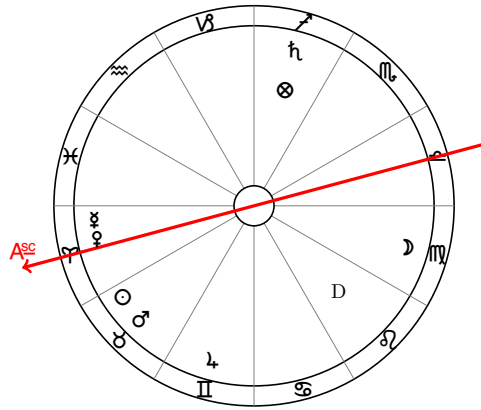


Figure 2.28: Chart 28 [IL.36.9, GH L104]

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L104) to approximately April 23, 104 AD (p.102).

[Chart 29: *Insane* ]

Another example: ☉, ☿ in ♊, ♃ in ♈, ♀ in ♌, ☿ in ♏, ☿ in ♎, the Lot of Fortune in ♈, the Lot of Daimon in ♏<sup>1</sup>.

The native was possessed of a god and insane. The ruler, ♄, of the Lot of Fortune was found in ♎, the IX Place of the God, and the ruler of Daimon, ♄, was in the Ascendant. ♀ was found at IC.

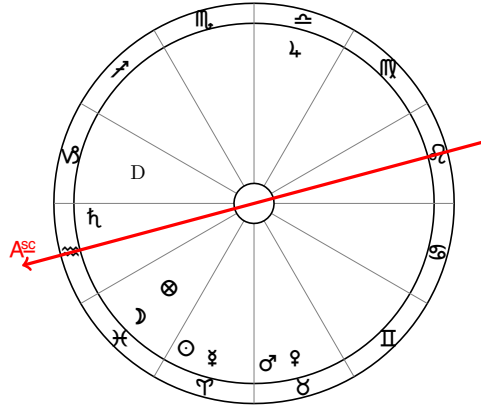


Figure 2.29: Chart 29 [II.36.10, GH L108]

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L108) to approximately March 28, 108AD (p.104)

[Chart 30: *Hunchback* ]

Another example: ☉, ☿ in ♏, ♃ in ♌, ♄ in ♍, ♅ in ♌, Ascendant in ♏, ♄ in ♏, ♀ in ♏, the Lot of Fortune in ♏, Daimon in ♏<sup>1</sup>.

The native  
was a hunch-  
back.

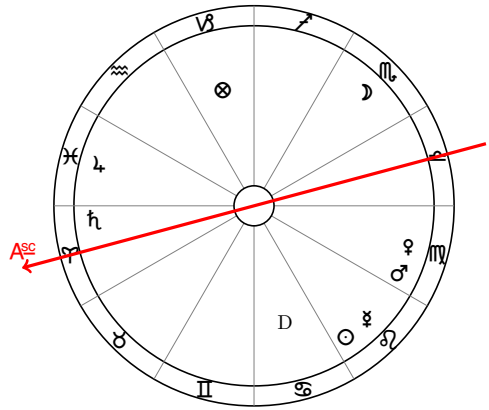


Figure 2.30: Chart 30 [II.36.11, GH L112]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L112) to approximately August 17, 112 AD (p.108).



## 2.37 Marriage, Wedlock, and Happiness. Various Theorems and Configurations (37K,38P)

/109P/ I have published, with explanations, all the methods which seem from my experience to be true. Now I will explain the Place/topic of Marriage, complicated to be sure, but easily grasped by those who pay attention.

Scientifically speaking, the Place of Marriage is considered to be the VII Sign from the Ascendant. It is also necessary to look at the location of Venus, the other stars in <♀'s> sign, as well as its aspects and rulers.

If Venus is operative in a tropic or a bicornporeal sign, especially for night births, it makes men oft-married and promiscuous, particularly if ♀ is in conjunction or—even more so—if ♂ is in aspect: then the native also rushes into the embrace of boys. If the sign is virile, the native is successful in gaining the object of his passions.

If Venus is operative, /115K/ and its ruler is either setting or in <the XII Place of> Bad Daimon, or if it is a malefic and afflicts ♀, or if it is wretchedly situated, it makes men unlucky in marriages and relationships.

If a malefic nullifies ♀ or—more particularly— its houseruler by being in aspect <with it>, it will cause deaths, injuries, or other problems to wives. If they are well situated at the nativity, they bring inheritances; if they are badly situated, diseases and pains.

If Saturn beholds the setting ♀, in most cases it makes unmarried, unsociable men. If ♀ is in the sign or terms of ♎, or if ♀ has ♎ directly on the line of opposition, with neither ♂ nor ♎ in aspect nor ♀ in conjunction with ♀, the native will be a widow or a virgin.

In all cases Saturn, when in opposition to ♀, brings sickly or barren wives—or for wives, brings sickly and

sterile husbands.

If Saturn is at MC and is in opposition to ♀, it brings wives who are slaves.

If Venus is in the house of ♀ and has ♀ in aspect, or if ♀ is leaving ♀ and making contact with ♀, or becoming attached to ♀, and is beheld by ♂, in these cases the native will lie with his nurse, with the wives of his tutors, with stepmothers, or with uncles and aunts.

APPLYING  
AND  
SEPARATING  
ASPECT

If the Sun is also in aspect with them or with the ☽, the native will be involved in perversion even more, /110P/ especially if the ☽ is in aspect with them or is aspected by them.

Venus in conjunction with ♀ in the Descendant or at IC brings the native a marriage below his station and causes him grief in this marriage.

Generally speaking, all those who have ♀ in conjunction with ♀, as a houseruler of ♀, or in superior aspect with ♀, and who have ♀ in aspect with both, are united with prominent or elderly women. If the native is a woman, the same applies to her.

The Moon and ♀ at the same angle unite the native with brothers or sisters, especially if ♀ and ♂ are also in aspect. The ☽ and ♀ square or in opposition make men jealous; ♂ in aspect as well intensifies the jealousy.

The Moon and ♀ trine in their own houses, especially at angles, cause the marriage of relatives; even more so if ♂ and ♀ are in aspect.

The Sun in its own house or exaltation and in conjunction with ♀ and ♀ /116K/ causes marriage with the father's relatives.

Venus in its own house or exaltation <or> terms and in conjunction with ♀ and the ☽ causes marriage with the mother's relatives.

Venus at IC with the ♃, or ♀ and the ♃ in opposition, particularly with one at MC, the other at IC, causes marriage with siblings or relatives.

In all cases Saturn in superior aspect, in opposition, or in conjunction with ♀, or as ♀'s houseruler, chills or contaminates marriages, especially if ☿ is in aspect.

Saturn in aspect with ♀ at or just following an angle causes shameless, degrading, rebellious marriages, those involving the low-born or slaves, for whose sake the native is snowed under with trouble, unless some star intercepts and cancels the malign influence. If ♃ is in aspect, most of the marriage's irregularity will be hidden and there will be no shame; the native will lie with prominent women, with women of high status. He will not have many children; his partners will be barren or conceive only with difficulty, and if they do conceive, they will miscarry. Apply similar reasoning to female nativities.

If Saturn is in aspect with ♀ or in ♀'s terms, and if ♀ itself is configured with ♃ and ♂, the native will achieve success with the help of children or females and will see /111P/ prosperity, but he will fail utterly in the end, unless the stars happen to be operative in their own houses or exaltations.

PLANET  
DIGNITY

If the Moon is struck by ♃'s rays or if it is configured with ♃, and if ♃ is in aspect along with ♃, the native will live with a low-born, purchased women<sup>1</sup>(♃ harms social standing.) In this configuration <concerning marriage>, if ♀ is in its exaltation and has ♃ in aspect, the native will become successful and propertied, and will be acknowledged on the part of great men, because of ♀. Again in this arrangement, if ☿ is in the configuration as well, the native will be vigorous, shrewd, intelligent, and charming; he will also be promiscuous and unstable in his marriages.

RAYS,  
FIGURE,  
ASPECT

---

<sup>1</sup>"Rays", "configured" and "aspect" are all used in a slightly different sense, why?

Generally speaking, Jupiter in aspect with ♀ from the right, being familiar with ♀, or in agreement to the degree, causes sociable men, those helped by women (or for women, those helped by men). Even if ♀ is afflicted, <♄> helps so that not the native is not entirely ruined.

EXACT  
DEGREE

Venus at an angle (especially in the Ascendant or at MC) and unafflicted by ♄ makes men happy in their marriages.

/117K/ Venus with ♄ in aspect restrains any malign influence so that no disaster occurs, and it causes affinity and marriage.

Venus in <the XII Place of> Bad Daimon, in its own house or exaltation, with ♄ in superior aspect, or beheld by ♄ in trine, makes a good marriage, but it will bring the grievous death of a good wife.

If Venus and Saturn are in Bad Daimon and ♄ does not behold them, the native becomes a widower or unhappily married, distressed by death and desertion. If in the preceding configuration (i.e. ♀ in Bad Daimon without ♄ in aspect) a malefic like ♂ is in aspect, the native becomes an adulterer or a victim of adultery, a dirty, unlovable man and consequently drawn into difficulties.

In all cases, <malefics> in conjunction with or opposition to ♀ cause separations, deaths, or grief-producing unions—or even worse, if they afflict the ☽ as well.

The Moon setting under the rays of the ☉ is not good for marriages.

Mars in conjunction with ☿ causes adultery, whoring, lechery; if their sign is tropic or bicorneporeal, it causes even worse: the native sins more often, he casts his eyes everywhere but does not attain his desires. Sometimes he lies with people like himself and suffers the terrible things at their hands that he had done <to others>. Even worse happens if ☿ is in aspect with them. (The same happens in

the case of feminine natiivities.) If ♄ is also in aspect, even more occurs: /112P/ the native is treated ungratefully even when he is kind to women, so much so that he plots against them as a result of their ill-treatment. Wives also suffer this at the hands of their husbands.

If Mars and Venus are setting under the rays of the ☉, they cause sneaking adulterers and secret sins. If these stars are rising or at angles, the sins are more public. If ♄ is in conjunction and rising with them, the adultery and the public outcry will be rather dangerous. If ♄ is also in aspect, the native escapes; if not, he will be seized and murdered, if he is fated to this sort of death. If he is not, then he will avoid death by paying a great ransom.

If Venus is unfavorably situated with ♂ in <the XII Place of> Bad Daimon, and if both of them are operative, not in their own sects, or if they are in the Descendant or in the house of another member of the same sect—for a native with this chart, the ruin will be more terrible, the adultery will be even more hazardous, the outcome will be murderous.

If Mars and Venus are in divorce, unpleasantness, jealousy, and anger, and they bring in succession even more plots and dangers. Because of their aspect with ♄, rebellious sins follow. The native is united to slaves and servants, is promiscuous, whores around, and becomes notorious. He is seduced by friends, slaves, and enemies, and is involved in riots and murder by poison. ♄ in conjunction or in aspect with ♀ causes the above mentioned effects, but they are secret. The native makes progress toward greater property—especially if ♄ is at morning rising or is at an angle.

Whenever Mars is in aspect with ♀ and in harmony with it, the native is united as a result of adultery.

Whenever Mercury is in aspect with Venus rising, with ♄ having nothing in common with <them or> the house-

ruler, the native is joined to a virgin or to a young women. If ♂ beholds, this is even more true. If ♃ beholds, this is positively certain.

It is generally true in all cases that Mercury in aspect with ♀ involves and unites the native with those who are young and of a lower class. Men and women with this nativity <do the same thing>.

If Mars is together or square with ♀, it makes adulterers, lechers, involvement with the base-born, criticism, divorces, and the deaths of mates. It is worse if ☿ is in opposition: this configuration unites the native with elderly or barren women; if ♃ <is in opposition>, with women of high rank.

If Saturn is configured with Jupiter while ♃ is in conjunction with ♀, the native lies with prominent women or noblewomen. (The same applies to women, but in addition, /113P/ whenever ♂ and ☿ are estranged from ♀, the women are spinsters, marry late in life, and are abstinent and chaste.) If ☿ and ♃ are in conjunction or trine with ♀, these results are more certain.

Those masculine nativities which have Venus rising as a morning star can command women; those which have ♀ under the rays of the ☉ are commanded by women. The reverse is true for feminine nativities.

Calculate the Marriage Lot as follows: for day births, determine the distance from ♃ to ♀ (for night births, from ♀ to ♃), then count this distance from the Ascendant. The point in opposition to this Lot is indicative of Adultery. If the ruler of the Marriage Lot is found in opposition, and if the ruler of the Lot of Adultery is in the Marriage Lot, the native will constantly commit adultery, then be reconciled, then having /119K/ reconciled, be separated, then again rejoin his mate in the course of his adulteries.

MARRIAGE  
LOT

LOT OF  
ADULTRY

If the ruler of the Marriage Lot is at morning rising, the native will marry at an early age; if it is at evening rising, he will marry late.

If the ruler is operative while setting, the native will have a jealous or an illegal marriage.

The ruler of Marriage causes the first marriage, the benefics in harmony with the Marriage-bringer or its ruler also cause marriages, especially if the signs of the stars in aspect or of the Marriage-bringer itself are bicorporeal.

**2.38 More About Marriage. Examples. (38K)**

<To find the Marriage Lot:> for men determine the distance from the ☉ to ♀ (for women from the ☽ to ♂), then count this distance from the Ascendant.

OTHER  
MARRIAGE  
LOTS

♀ and ♂ “depress” both luminaries because the Sun has its exaltation in ♋ and its depression in ♏, where it causes the day to become shorter. The Moon has its exaltation in ♊ and its depression in ♎, where it causes the cosmic disappearance of light. So, Venus will be the Marriage-bringer for men, Mars the Marriage-bringer for women—generally speaking.

MARRIAGE  
BRINGER

For men the Place of Marriage should accord with Daimon; for women it should accord with the Lot of Fortune, because of the conjoining and uniting of the ☉ and ☽. <If the Places do accord with the Lots>, the marriage will be judged harmonious and legitimate.

If many stars are in conjunction or in aspect with the Marriage-bringer, there will be many marriages.

If the stars are linked with the Moon and have Jupiter in aspect, the marriages will be legitimate.

If Saturn is in aspect, the marriages will end in death.

If /114P/ Mercury is in aspect without ♄, the native will be criticized for marrying a slave.

If Jupiter is in aspect with ♃, a legitimate marriage is indicated—some will even be ennobled by marriage.

If in addition these stars are linked to or have some relationship with ♀, the marriage will result from a seduction.

If Jupiter is in aspect, the marriage will be legitimate, profitable, and harmonious.



If Jupiter is absent, but Saturn, Mercury, and Mars are in aspect, the marriage will be with streetwalking, sterile, degraded, or crippled women.

If the Moon is with ♀, whorish and lecherous qualities arise as well as jealousy and quarrels; this sort of union is full of pretense.

/120K/ If the Sun rules the Marriage-bringer and is configured favorably, and if ♄ is linked with the ♃, the marriage will be legitimate, secure, and respected.

If the Moon is beheld by ♄, the marriage will be with an orphan or under the direction of a guardian.

If Venus and Mars are together or are linked with the ♃, the marriage will be with a woman the native has raped or seduced.

If the Moon and Venus are configured with Jupiter and the Sun, with no other stars in aspect, the native will marry once.

For men and women it will be necessary to examine the Lot of Fortune and Daimon, their squares and oppositions, their houserulers and its ruler, to see whether they are benefics or malefics. If they are configured in their own sects, the marriage will be fine and harmonious. If the places and their rulers are in opposition and are espied by malefics, then there will be setbacks, quarrels, jealousy, hostility, and trials concerning the marriage. Occasionally the native will suffer the compulsion of legal penalties.

If Saturn is in aspect while all other stars are properly configured, death will separate the mates.

If Mercury is the ruler of Daimon, the Moon the ruler of the Marriage-bringer, and both are in conjunction or aspect with each other, the native will marry great ladies or women prominent for their money or rank. If ♄ is also in some aspect, the union will be profitable and har-

monious, but if ♄ or ♂ is in aspect, upset, hatred, and separations will occur and damaging accusations will follow.

If Jupiter is houseruler, is configured with the Moon, and has ♄ in aspect, the native will unite with his mother or step-mother, but if the ☿ has no relationship with the Lot of the Mother, he will unite with elderly women.

If Jupiter is the houseruler of Daimon and /115P/ Venus of the Marriage-bringer, the native unites with sisters or relatives.

If Saturn is in aspect, all this will happen secretly; if ♄ and ♂ are in aspect, divorces and public exposure will occur.

If the Sun is in aspect while ♄ is absent, the marriage will be legitimate and loving, harmonious and profitable.

If the Sun is the houseruler, the ☿ is the ruler of the Marriage-bringer and configured with the ☼, and ♄ is in aspect, the marriage will be harmonious, characterized by equality on both sides, legitimate, respected, and illustrious.

If the Sun is the houseruler, ♀ is the ruler of the Marriage-bringer, and ♄ is in aspect, the native will be criticized for marrying a daughter. /121K/

If the Marriage-bringer is located with ♄ and <♄> or ♂ is the ruler of Daimon, the native will remain unmarried.

If Saturn is the houseruler of Daimon, and ♀ holds the Place of Marriage and is found to be with ♄ and to have ♂ in aspect, the native will marry barren women or those of bad reputation.

Whenever the Marriage-bringer is away from an angle or is turned away from Daimon, the native marries foreigners or aliens, or gets a wife from abroad—what sort

<of wife> will be clear from the nature of the signs and stars.

In the same way, for women it will be necessary to examine the Lot of Fortune and the Marriage-bringer (=from the ♃ to ♂) and to interpret their influences.

If the Moon rules the Lot <of Fortune>, and if Mercury rules the Marriage-bringer and is in conjunction or aspect with the ♃, the native will unite herself to a slave or a freedman; if ♃ is in some aspect, this marriage will be legitimized. If under the preceding circumstances ♃ is in the Place of Children and ♎ is also in aspect, the native will unite herself to a child or some youth in the position of a child. If the Place of Child belongs to ♎ and the ♃ itself is in conjunction with ♎, the native will remain unmarried.

If the Moon is houseruler, and if Saturn is the Marriage-bringer and is in conjunction or aspect with the ♃, she will marry, but will hate her husband and live a disorderly life.

If the Moon rules the Lot of Fortune and ♂ the Marriage-bringer, and if they are in aspect with each other, the marriage will be by force, by kidnapping, or by war and captivity. If ♃ is also in aspect, later the marriage will be legitimized.

If Mars is in opposition to the ♃, with ♎ and the ☉ in aspect, the husband will be an acknowledged homosexual.

For feminine nativities, if Venus rules the Lot, with the Sun in conjunction and holding the Marriage-bringer and the Father's Lot, and with ♎ in aspect, the native will marry her father. If the Sun rules the Father's Lot, she will marry an older man in the position of a father.

If /116P/ Venus is the houseruler, Mercury holds the Place of Marriage, and ♎ is in aspect with both, the native will be promiscuous and live in brothels—but if

♄ is also in aspect, she will be purchased and become a loving wife. If ♄ is not in aspect, she will live shamelessly, in misery. If in the preceding configuration, ♀ is found in ♁ or ♃, she will also be depraved.

If Mars holds Daimon /122K/ and the Moon holds the Marriage-bringer, the marriage will be by rape. If the two are in opposition and have ♁ or the ☉ in aspect, the perpetrator will be recognized and caught.

If Venus rules the Marriage-bringer and Mars the Lot of Fortune, the marriage will be the result of seduction. If in addition ♁ is in aspect with ♀, and ♄ is absent, the native will be convicted of adultery.

As for the rest of the configurations, whatever has been said of the masculine nativities should be applied to the feminine as well. Even if this exposition seems quite complicated, it will become most clear to these who read <attentively>.

### 2.39 Children and Childlessness

The Place of Children, which is figured from ☿ and ♀, must be examined: if afflicted by ♄ and ♂, they cause childlessness or the loss of children, but if helped by ♃, they cause fine offspring. . .

LOT OF  
CHILDREN

Therefore, it is necessary to examine the houseruler of this Lot of Children, which is found as follows: for male nativities, this Lot is found by determining the distance from ♃ to ☿ (for female, from ♃ to ♀), then counting this distance from the Ascendant.

LOTS FOR  
BOYS OR  
GIRLS

If the ruler of the Lot of Children has malefics in aspect, it destroys children; if it has the Givers of Children in aspect, it is indicative of fine offspring.

Petosiris says:

PETOSIRIS

Whenever Jupiter, Venus, and Mercury are not afflicted, they are indicative of fine offspring. When the opposite is true, they cause lamenting and the deaths of children. If the stars that are in aspect with the Givers of Children are in bicorporeal signs, or if <the Givers> themselves are in bicorporeal signs, the number is doubled. Feminine stars in aspect with the Child giver grant female children; male stars grant male children.

For male nativities: if Jupiter is with Mars as Mars's houseruler or if ♂ is ♃'s houseruler, and if Saturn is in aspect with Venus or is in Venus's house, the configuration is "productive" of childlessness and cuts off those already born.

For female nativities: the Moon in the places of Mercury, and /117P/ Venus in a masculine sign with Saturn

in aspect or as houseruler cause childlessness and destroy those already born.

If Jupiter beholds the ♃ or ♀, if the Moon is in the places of ☿, if ♄ is in opposition or at MC, and if ♂ is in aspect with ♄, the native will /123K/ bear only one child or be barren.

Venus with Jupiter in aspect and afflicted by ♄ causes a difficult childbirth of one infant. If the Moon is also afflicted, the native will be completely childless.

Saturn and Mars at MC, or one at MC, the other at IC, bring childlessness, unless a benefic is in some aspect.

## 2.40 Brothers

The Sun in the Ascendant causes the native to have few or very few brothers.

Saturn in the Descendant causes the native to have few or very few brothers.

Jupiter, Mercury, and Venus at the angles are the bestowers of brothers, but Saturn in opposition kills the oldest brother.

Saturn in conjunction with Mars is destructive of brothers or makes them sickly.

Venus and the Moon domiciled in the III Place from the Ascendant, the Place of Brothers, grants sisters, especially if the sign is feminine.

If the Sun, Jupiter, and Mercury are in a masculine sign <in the III Place>, they grant brothers.

Malefics in aspect with the Place of Brothers, if that Place is unfavorably situated<sup>1</sup>, kill the brothers who have been born or cause the native to have few or no brothers. Benefics in aspect with the Place of Brothers not only grant brothers, but make them prosper.

Mars, when operative in the Place of Brothers and favorably situated—especially when it has a benefic in aspect and is beholding the ☿—becomes a Giver of Brothers.

Some astrologers calculate the Place of Brothers in the same manner as the Lots: for day births, determine the distance from ♈ to ♋ (for night births the reverse), then count this distance from the Ascendant.

LOT OF  
BROTHERS

---

<sup>1</sup>VRS wording is somewhat different: “And when the destroyers are witnessing the place concerning siblings, if they should be poorly situated,”. The “unfavorably situated” applies to the malefics, not the “Place of Brothers” (VRS Volume 3, p.11)

## 2.41 Violent Deaths. Examples.

The opposition of Sun and Moon is not always bad. Only if an approaching malefic beholds the phase or if the malefic casts its rays while it has some relationship with the luminaries does the opposition become bad. Consequently, even the all-fortunate nativities do not remain lucky to the end; at /124K/ some place the houserulership of the star /118P/ becomes badly situated or reversed and causes ill fortune.

Petosiris seems to have defined the place perfectly, PETOSIRIS even though he spoke in mystic riddles:

The beginning, the end, the controller, and the measurement standard of the whole is the houseruling star of each nativity: it makes clear what kind of person the native will be, what kind of basis his livelihood will have, what his character will be, what sort of body <=health and appearance> he will have, and all the things that will accompany him in life. Without this star nothing, neither occupation nor rank, will come to anyone.

But, how is it possible for a nativity to succeed in everything or, on the other hand, to fail in everything, depending just on the houserulership of just one star? On the contrary, generally one star is found to be ruler of the basis of the nativity (i.e. noble, average, base-born) from its beginning (or that one star activates the influences of the rest). Another star is the ruler of the remaining factors. We see some men fortunate in their livelihood and public standing, adorned with all magnificence, with the apparent houseruler configured appropriately. <We see> these same men, however, to be unfortunate in the wives and children, becoming outrageous and disgusting,

BASIS



polluting their livelihood, and becoming public scandals as if they were unworthy of their excellent beginnings. Some are even ruined later or die violently. Therefore the native is not fortunate in everything nor does everything happen as the consequence of <one> houseruler. Another afflicted houseruler blackens reputations by bringing many crises. We also note that other men have gone from a low and ignoble station to an unsurpassed and unhopd-for condition. We note others who are fortunate in their wives and children, but needy in their livelihood. Still others are prosperous in possessions, but of low rank and sickly. Others are long-lived, but toil-worn and crippled. Some are rich but short-lived or consumptive, and hence unable to profit from their riches. So we say: one star is the Life-giver, another is the ruler of property and of death.

But, someone will say, if the houseruler is unfavorably situated, the native will be short-lived. For that very reason, since it is unfavorably situated, it is of no use for <the houseruler> to grant a prosperous livelihood, /125K/ nor would it be appropriate for the houseruler to make a subjugated and base-born native illustrious and distinguished later in life. Nor will a well-configured star cause a high-born native, one never /119P/ entangled in evildoing, to be condemned and to die violently. Instead, the unfavorably situated star creates the lesser man, but the ruler of rank and livelihood, found at an angle and receiving the chronocratorship, renders the man illustrious. If so, then this star which makes the man fortunate, if found at an angle or in operative places, keeps him fortunate during its own chronocratorship. But when the star comes to have another star which causes disease, infirmity, or some other critical affliction in superior aspect or in opposition, then it will yield and its influence will weaken.

Many other noteworthy things happen in the life of

man, things which come about not through the activity or operation of one houseruler, but through the activity of many. If anyone researches thoroughly the Places and the houserulers, he will determine quite easily the area in which the nativity is fortunate and the area in which it is unfortunate. Whenever any star that has a relationship with the nativity (i.e. one that controls livelihood, life, injury, disease, occupation, or any of the other areas of concern) is afflicted in one respect, in that respect it will harm the nativity. Indeed, we find that the Compiler does not use <just> one influential houseruler. He says:

One controls occupations, one the possession of years, one stability and change, one decline;

or again:

Observing the positions of the sun and moon at conjunction and their separations after full moon, with respect to the angles and the signs following them, on which the whole <forecast> depends;

or again:

When starting to cast a horoscope, one must examine the Descendant, the sign preceding the Descendant, and the sign just following the Descendant, because in these places is found the fated outcome.

He says many other similar things. So it is necessary to consider one place for occupation and rank, another for life, another for injury, disease, and death. Not everything will depend on one houseruler. We act rationally

when we make our forecasts after considering many influences. Later in our treatise we will clarify these points, /126K/ particularly in <the section on> the distribution of the chronocratorships. Now we will press on to consider violent deaths.

When the ruler of the new or full moon at the nativity is turned away from its sign or is unfavorably situated, with a malefic in aspect, it indicates violent death. In the same way, if ☿ is in opposition to the full moon and has malefics in aspect, it brings a bad cause of death.

If Saturn, Mars, or Mercury are located in the sign <of the ♄> on the fortieth day, /120P/ they indicate violent death. Likewise malefics in the Descendant or in the sign preceding the Descendant bring violent deaths or the onset of diseases and miserable deaths.

The VIII Place from the Ascendant has the same influence on the cause of death; so does the 8th Place from the Lot of Fortune. It is necessary to examine the Lot and its ruler to see in which signs they are located, because the cause of death will be foretold by them: the Moon (which is Fortune), when in conjunction with the ☾ in ♏, suffers an eclipse or loss of light in the eighth sign, Scorpio. Therefore Scorpio is called its depression.

### *[Indications from Signs]*

We will give a brief tour of each sign in order to make what is said here easily understandable:

Aries is destroyed by Scorpio. Since they are both domiciles of Mars, Mars is a destroyer of itself. Therefore <Aries> causes suicides, those who throw themselves from heights, and those ready for death; accomplices in crime, bandits, and murderers (i.e. those who bring a cause of death on themselves), plus those perishing from animal attacks, from fires, or from collapsing buildings.

♈

<It also causes men to die> from animals, bleeding, or attacks.

Taurus is destroyed by Sagittarius, i.e. Venus is destroyed by Jupiter. Men born under this configuration die peacefully from luxurious living, from stuffing themselves with food, wine, or sex, or from strokes while asleep or while relaxing. No distressing cause of death will appear, unless some malefic in conjunction or in aspect introduces and indicates a cause of death appropriate to its nature. ♂

Gemini is destroyed by Capricorn, i.e. Mercury by Saturn. Some men die violently troubled by black bile, are attacked by painful cramps or are harmed in damp places by beasts or by crawling things. Some are condemned to death, /127K/ imprisoned, or suffocated. Some are attacked by bandits or the enemy. Some are poisoned—because of the wet quality <of the sign>. ♄

Cancer is destroyed by Aquarius, i.e. the Moon by Saturn. Men perish through dampness or internal complaints, from pains of the spleen and stomach, or from vomiting fluids. They die at sea, on rivers, from chills, from attacks of beasts and crawling things. They perish from elephantiasis, jaundice, lunacy, poisoning, long imprisonment, and other chronic fevers. Women die from pains of the breasts, cancer, infirmities of the genitals or womb, from suffocation, or from abortions. ♋

Leo is destroyed by Pisces, i.e. the Sun by Jupiter. As a result men die from heart attacks /121P/ and from complaints of the liver. They are at risk in wet places or from moist complaints, falls, the ague, accidents in the baths, and the treachery of women. ♊

Virgo is destroyed by Aries, i.e. Mercury by Mars. They die from treachery and crime. They are attacked by the enemy or by bandits. They perish from burns, collapsing buildings, blindness, imprisonment, the wrath of noblemen, or from captivity, falls from animals or high ♈

places, the crushing of limbs, or animal attacks. Females die from collapsed uterus, abortions, hemorrhages, or consumption.

Libra is destroyed by Taurus, i.e. Venus by itself. Therefore men become suicides through poisoned drinks, through snakebite, through self-starvation. They die from excessive intercourse, excision of the uvula, drowning, or they become mutilated, blind, or paralyzed. They are attacked by females or fall from high places or animals.

Scorpio is destroyed by Gemini, i.e. Mars by Mercury. ♎ They die by knife cuts to the genitals or the rump, or from strangury, festering sores, choking, crawling things, violence, war, attacks by bandits, assaults of pirates, or because of officials, and by fire, impaling, attacks of beasts and crawling things.

Sagittarius is destroyed by Cancer, i.e. Jupiter by the Moon. ♐ They die from disorders of the spleen, liver, stomach, from vomiting fluids or blood, falls from animals, attacks of ravenous beasts, collapsing buildings, shipwreck, wet places. They die from lunacy, blindness, feebleness.

Capricorn is destroyed by Leo, i.e. Saturn by the Sun. They die from heart attacks and fractures and from accidents in the baths or from burns, through the wrath of kings and noblemen, or by impaling, injuries from beasts and animals, or falls from high places.

Aquarius is destroyed by Virgo, i.e. Saturn by Mercury. ♒ They die /128K/ from wasting of the vitals, dropsy, elephantiasis, jaundice, fever, sword slashes, dysentery, and from the treachery of women.

Pisces is destroyed by Libra, i.e. Jupiter by Venus. ♓ <They die> from moist complaints, poisoning, painful fluxes or cramps, complaints of the genitals or liver, sciatica, attacks of beasts and crawling things.

*Examples*

So much for the subject of violent death. In addition it will be necessary to take into account the influence of each sign on injuries and diseases so as to /122P/ make the type of death obvious. Each star in conjunction or aspect will have the effect of adding its influence to the cause of death according to the star's nature. It is necessary to examine how the Places and their rulers are situated and whom they have in aspect (viz. related or unrelated stars), and thus make your determination. Malefics in conjunction with the Places or in aspect with the house-rulers bring violent death. Benefics indicate the cause to be distress, injury, disease, or an attack of fever.

For example: Gemini is destroyed by Capricorn and Aquarius by Virgo, i.e. Mercury by Saturn and Saturn by Mercury. Now if these stars have the relationship of opposition or square in a nativity, they cause men to have short lives or a wretched death, since the Lifegiver is in opposition to the ruler of Death. If they have no relationship, but simply behold each other without being in their own domiciles, they bring setbacks, trials, exile, and other temporary misfortunes. (Consider the arrangement of Mars and Mercury as having the same effects.) The Old Astrologer wants them to be in opposition when he says:

Let every opposing configuration (=rising and setting) of any star or of the Sun and the Moon cause the native to be subject to the legal process.

But I declare that crises concerning rank, livelihood, and death will occur, if the stars have a relationship involving destruction or some other houseruling function.

## [Chart 31: Drowning]

Examples: ☉, ♂, ♀ in ☊, ♄, ♀ in ♈, ♃ in ♎, ♀ in ♈, Ascendant in ♌, the Lot of Fortune in ♈, the <8th> Place of Death in ♈<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>.

The ♀ was in this Place, and ♄ was in conjunction with the Lot of Fortune. The ruler <of ♈>, the ☉, was with ♂ in ☊, a wet sign. This person died in the bath, drowned in the water. ♂ was in opposition to the full

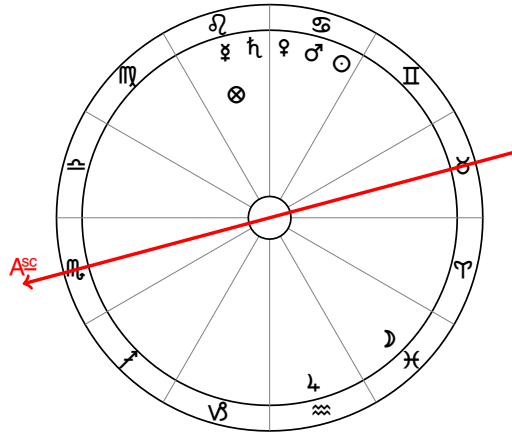


Figure 2.31: Chart 31 [IL.41.1, GH L123]

moon <♋>, and ♄, the ruler <of the full moon>, was turned away. Therefore he died violently./129K/

<sup>1</sup>♈ is the 8th from the Lot of Fortune [VRS *Greek Track Vol. VIII* p.17]

<sup>2</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L123) to approximately July 2, 123 AD (p.122)





*[Chart 33: Beheaded]*

Another example: ☉ in ♉, ☾ in ♋, ☿, ♀ in ♊, ♄ in ♈, ♀ in ♏, Ascendant in ♌, the Lot of Fortune in ♊<sup>1</sup>.

In this sign  
♋, ♀, and ☿  
attended each  
other, being  
destroyers of  
each other, and  
they were in as-  
pect with the  
☾ <☐>. Like-  
wise the ruler  
<♋> of the full  
moon <☐>  
was turned  
away, and ♄  
in the <8th>

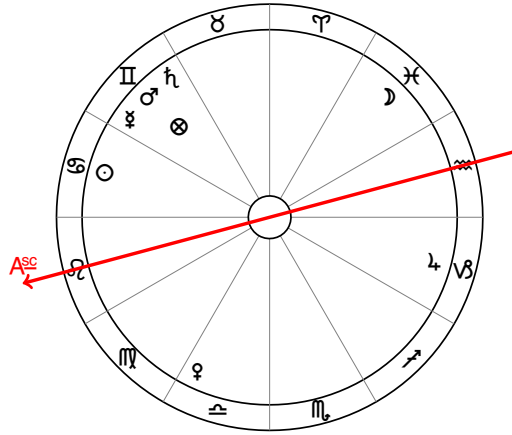


Figure 2.33: Chart 33 [II.41.3, GH L87]

Place of Death and in opposition to the ☉ was not able to help. The native was beheaded.

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L87) to approximately July 9, 87 AD (p.95)

[Chart 34: Beheaded]

Another example: ☉, ☿, ♂, ♀, ♀ in ♊, ☽ in ♋, ♄ in ♌, Ascendant in ♏<sup>1</sup>.

The native  
was beheaded.

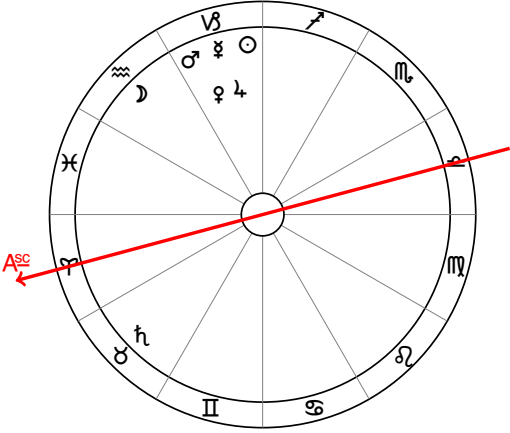


Figure 2.34: Chart 34 [II.41.4, GH L86]

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L86) to approximately December 27, 86 AD (p.94)

[Chart 35: Roasted in his Bath]

Another example: ☉, ♀ in ♊, ☽ in ♋, ☿ in ♌, ♄ in ♍, ♂ in ♎, ♀, Ascendant in ♏, the Lot of Fortune in ♏, the <8th> Place of Death in ♏<sup>1</sup>.

The rulers <♂♀> of these places were in opposition to each other and in wet signs; furthermore ♂ was in the Descendant. The native was roasted while relaxing in the bath.

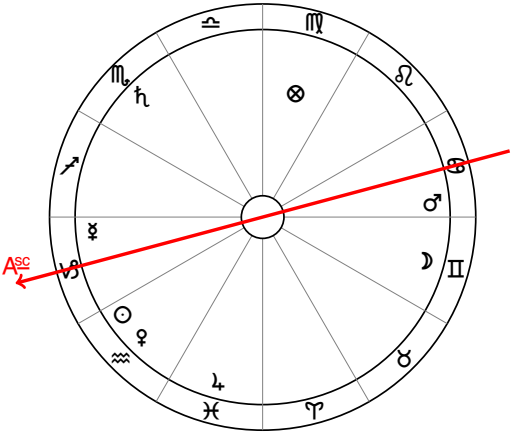


Figure 2.35: Chart 35 [II.41.5, GH L101]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L101) to approximately January 28, 101 AD (p.99)

[Chart 36: *Burnt Alive* ]

Another example: ☉, ♀ in ♊, ☽ in ♋, ☿ in ♏, ♄ in ♏, ♂ in ♏, Ascendant in ♊, the Lot of Fortune in ♏<sup>1</sup>.

♂ was in ♏, a fiery and solar sign, in opposition to the Ascendant. ☿ and ♄ were in superior aspect to the <8th> Place of Death <♏>. The native was burned alive.

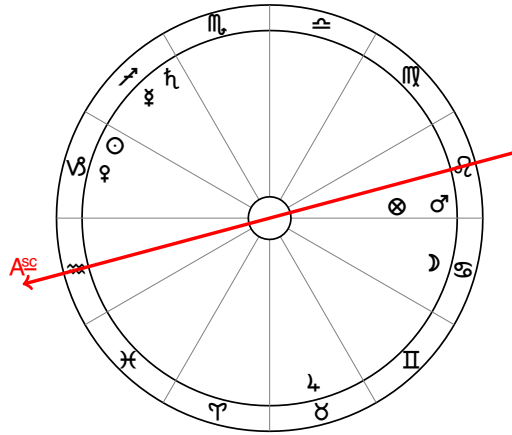


Figure 2.36: Chart 36 [II.41.6, GH L103]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L103) to approximately January 10, 103 AD (p.101-2)

*[Chart 37: Thrown to the Lions]*

Another example: ☉ in ♍, ☽ in ♋, ♄ in ♌, ♀ in ♈, ♂ in ♈, Ascendant in ♉, ♀ in ♋, ♄ in ♌, the Lot of Fortune in ♋<sup>1</sup>.

The ☽ was in ♋ and was in inferior aspect to ♂, which was in opposition to the ☉. The <8th> Place of Death was in ♌, and ♄ was there. The native was thrown to the lions. /130K/

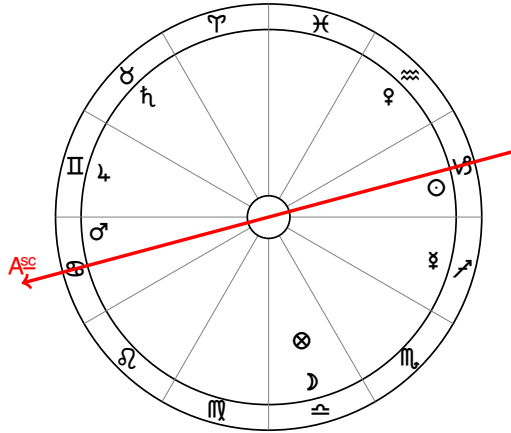


Figure 2.37: Chart 37 [II.41.7, GH L115]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L115) to approximately December 26, 115 AD (p.112)

*[Chart 38: Poisoned]*

Another example: ☉, ☽, ♀ in ♊, ♄ in ♈, ♀ in ♋, ♂ in ♌, ♀ in ♍, Ascendant in ♏. The Lots were also in ♏<sup>1</sup>.

The ruler  
<of the Lots>,  
♄, was in the  
<8th> Place  
of Death <♈>  
and was beheld  
by ♀. ♂ was  
in opposition to  
the Ascendant.  
The native died  
by poison.

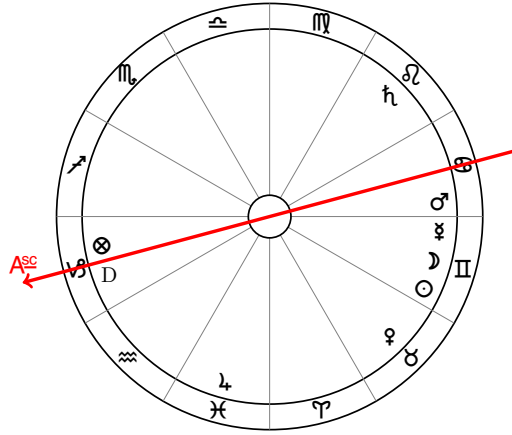


Figure 2.38: Chart 38 [II.41.8, GH L65]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L65) to approximately May 24, 65 AD (p.84)

*[Chart 39: Drowned]*

Another example: ☉, ☿, Ascendant in ♂, ♃ in ♉, ♀ in ♊, ♄ in ♋, ♂ in ♌, ♀ in ♍, the Lot of Fortune in ♉<sup>1</sup>.

The ♃ was in ♉ beheld by ♀ and ♂. The ruler <♃> of Daimon <☿> and the ruler <♂> of the full moon <☾> were in opposition. The native drowned in bilge water.  
/124P/

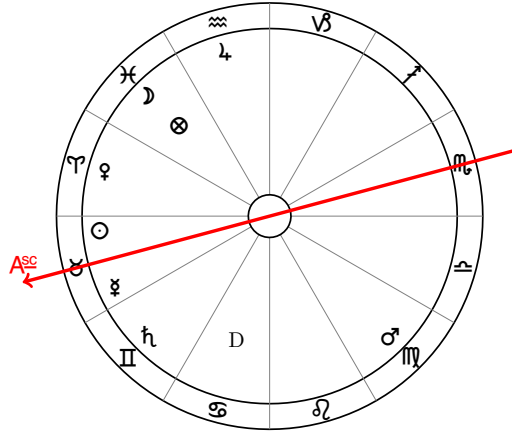


Figure 2.39: Chart 39 [II.41.9, GH L88]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L88) to approximately May 5, 88 AD (p.95)

[Chart 40: *Hung Himself*]

Another example: ☉ in ♏, ☽, ☿ in ♏, ♄ in ♏, ♀ in ♏, Ascendant, ♀ in ♏, the Lot of Fortune in ♏<sup>1</sup>.

♄, the ruler <of the 8th Place> of Death was in ♏ and in superior aspect to ☿, the ruler of the Lot of Fortune, and to the ☽. Furthermore ♀ was in opposition to the <8th> Place of Death <♏>. The native hanged himself.

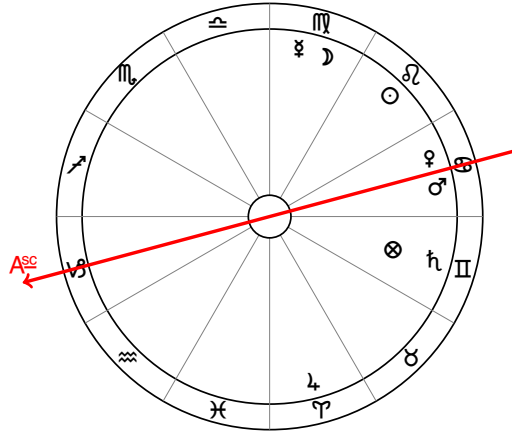


Figure 2.40: Chart 40 [II.41.10, GH L89]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L89) to approximately July 29, 89 AD (p.96)



*[Chart 41: Thrown to the Lions]*

Another example: ☉, ♀ in ♊, ☾, ♀ in ♋, ♄ in ♎, ♃, ♂ in ♏, Ascendant in ♌, the Lot of Fortune in ♈<sup>1</sup>.

The ruler  
<♃, of the Lot  
of Fortune>  
was in the De-  
scendant with  
♂. The <8th>  
Place of Death  
was in ♎. ♄,  
the ruler of the  
full moon<?>,  
was turned  
away and ♂  
was in opposi-  
tion to its own  
house <♌>. The native was thrown to the lions.

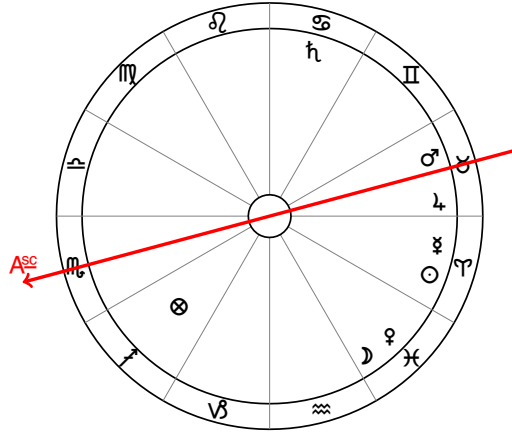


Figure 2.41: Chart 41 [II.41.11, GH L91]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L91) to approximately April 4, 91 AD (p.96)

*[The Opposition, Malefics, and Evil Men]*

In regard to the configuration of opposition, we have learned that malefics are not harmful in all ways for all nativities. Occasionally they are even benefic, especially for noble nativities, with the caution that <these nativities> are entangled in evils. Such nativities are violent men, living with struggles and involved in wicked, lawless activities. They act illegally; they plunder and rob; they become covetous and insanely arrogant because of the—temporary—blessings of fame. They attribute their own faults to others. Furthermore they despise God and death, because they are themselves masters of life and death. As a result good fortune does not stay with such men throughout their lives, but some fall from glory to a dishonored and lowly life—because of the configuration of opposition. Others die violently. Some suffer what /131K/ they had inflicted on others, experiencing vengeance and punishment while railing at their previous, vain appearance of glory. When stripped in a moment's time of the possessions which they had swept together after years of toil, care, and violence, they grieve or they unwillingly yield to others.

MALEFIC AS  
BENEFC

Along with their unsteady fortune, other things follow such men: Nemesis pulling at the reins, envy, plots, treachery, grief, care, bodily exhaustion, so that even if they wished to exchange their useless prosperity for the fortune of the average man, they cannot do so, but must suffer whatever Fate forces on her unwilling victims.

The configuration of opposition can be interpreted in two ways: one way when a star in the Ascendant is in opposition to another; the second when a star is in opposition to its own house, triangle, or exaltation. The rulers of the triangles or the sects will be most malign and most disturbing to livelihoods when they are in opposition to each other.

### 3.1 The Control

Various astrologers have handed down various teachings about the basis of the <nativity's> length of life. Since this topic seems quite complicated and complex, we will clarify it using methods proven by our own experience. The first topics of discussion will be “control<sup>2</sup>,” “projection of rays,” and “houserulership.”

First let the control with respect to the Sun and the Moon be investigated. Some give day births to the Sun, night births to the Moon, but I say that the Sun controls night births and the Moon day births, if they happen to be configured advantageously. If both are, assign control to the one which is more appropriately configured in its own sect or triangle. Then the houseruler is found from the terms of the controlling star.

DELINEATION  
NOTE

If both <the ☉ and the ☾> are unfavorably situated, then the term of the degree in the Ascendant or at MC will fix the houserulership, usually that <star> whose ruler is in an appropriate configuration with the Ascendant.

Let these controlling points be considered as proven by us.

#### *[Day Births]*

The first control: the ☉ in ♈, the ☾ in ♉; the luminary in appropriate configuration with the Ascendant or MC will have the control, and the ruler of its term will be houseruler. If both are in the terms of the same star, that star will unquestionably be judged the houseruler.

---

<sup>2</sup>In VRS, “the control’ is “the predominator” (VRS 3.1 p.27)

The second control: if the ☉ is in the Ascendant, the ☿ in <the XII Place of the> Bad Daimon, the ☉ will have control.

If the ☉ is in <the XI Place of the> Good Daimon, and the ☿ is at MC, the ☉ will have control.

If the ☉ is in the Descendant while the ☿ is in the sign just following the Descendant, /133K/ the ☉ will have control.

If the ☿ is in the Descendant while the ☉ is in the sign just following the Descendant, the ☉ will have control.

If the ☉ just precedes MC while the ☿ is in the Ascendant, the ☿ will have control.

If the ☉ again just precedes MC while the ☿ just follows the Ascendant, the ☿ will have control.

If the ☉ again just precedes MC while the ☿ /126P/ is also at MC, the ☿ will have control.

If the ☉ just precedes MC and the ☿ just follows MC, the ☿ will have control.

If the ☿ precedes MC while the ☉ is at IC, the ☉ will have control.

If the ☿ precedes MC while the ☉ just follows IC, the ☉ will have control.

If the ☉ precedes the overhead angle while the ☿ follows IC, the ☿ will have control.

If the ☉ precedes the overhead angle while the ☿ is at IC, the ☿ will have control.

If both luminaries precede MC, the Ascendant will have control and the ruler if its terms will be considered the houseruler.

If the ☽ follows MC while the ☉ is in <the IX Place of> the God, the luminary which first sends its rays exactly to the Ascendant's degree-position will have control.

If the ☉ and the ☽ just precede the Ascendant in the XII Place, MC will have control and the ruler of its terms will be houseruler.

As can be seen, if the nativity is during the day, the luminaries are not dominant if they are above the earth. The Ascendant will have control and the ruler of its degrees will be the houseruler.

### *[Night Births]*

For night births, if the luminaries precede IC, MC will have control.

If the ☉ just follows IC while the ☽ just precedes MC, the luminary which first sends its rays exactly to the Ascendant will have control.

If the ☉ and the ☽ are in the Descendant, the term of the <preceding> new moon will have control and the ruler of its degrees will be the houseruler. Similarly if both are in the Ascendant, at MC, or at IC, the term of the new moon will have control and the ruler of its terms will be the houseruler.

If the luminaries are in the same sign (or in different signs) and in the terms of the same star, infallibly that star will be the houseruler.

If the ☉ is found to be in its own depression <☉>, it will not be the apheta, unless it is exactly in the Ascendant (to the degree). The same is true for the ☽ in ☾ <its depression>.

If the ☽ is found to be new and to be under the rays of the ☉, it will not be the apheta, unless it too is exactly in the Ascendant.

If the ☽ is nearing full /134K/ and passes out of this phase within the term in the Ascendant, it will be both the apheta and the anaereta, if it passes out of the full-moon phase on that same day. It will be necessary to examine the number of degrees between this day and the full moon; having found this number, <you can> forecast the number of years. /127P/

For example: Ascendant, ☽ in ♉22°. On the same day it passed out of the full-moon phase at 27° of the same sign. The distance from its position then and the full moon was 5°, which totals 4 years. The native lived that many years.

Death will occur particularly if a malefic applies its rays and if it is in aspect or opposition to the sign.

If a benefic is in the same relation, there will be infirmity and disease instead of death. The rest of the ☽'s phases during its connection with <the ☉> are destructive.

It is necessary to consider the control to be certain if the ☉ or the ☽ is in aspect with the ruler of the terms, and if it is at an angle or in operative degrees. If it is found to be turned away, the nativity is judged to lack a houseruler.

If the ruler of the ☉'s or the ☽'s sign and the ruler of the terms exchange terms, then too will the houseruler-ship be without a controller.

It will be necessary to determine if the star that seems to be houseruler is in the Descendant, for if it is, that nativity as well will lack a houseruler.

### 3.2 The Significant Degrees of the Angles\*\*

#### *[Finding the Operative Degrees]*

First of all, fix the degree-positions of the Ascendant, MC, and the other angles. Then it is necessary to take the distance in degrees from the Ascendant to IC (moving in the order of the signs), to consider one third of that total distance to be the “operative” degrees in the configuration of the angles, and to consider the stars in these degrees, whether benefics or malefics, to be powerful.

Consider the rest of the degrees in order up to IC, as well as the stars in them, to be “inoperative” and inpropitious. The points in opposition to the Ascendant and to the other angles will fall into the same pattern with respect to operative and inoperative degrees and the stars in <the operative degrees> will be powerful. It is therefore obvious that there will not always be 30° at an angle, but sometimes more, sometimes fewer.

If in the Ascending and Descending signs there are fewer /**135K**/ than 30 powerful degrees, then there will be more than 30° at MC and IC.

If in the Ascending sign and its opposite there are more than 30°, then at MC and IC there will be fewer.

An example: Ascendant at ♈ 13°, MC at ♈ 22°, IC at ♏ <22°>, Descendant at ♏ 13°. I take the distance from the Ascendant to IC, /**128P**/ 99°. One-third of this is 33°. I count this distance from the Ascendant and stop at ♈ 16°. These degrees and the stars in them will be powerful; the rest of the degrees from Aries 16° to IC will be inoperative. The points in opposition will have the same effect.

Secondly I take the distance from MC to the Ascendant, 81°. One-third of this is 27°. I count this from MC and stop at ♈ 19°. These degrees and those in opposition

to them will be operative; the rest will be inoperative. It is necessary to do likewise for other nativities in order to know whether stars are in operative or inoperative degrees.

*[Another Method\*\*]*

Now to me the following method seems more scientific: take the distance from the degree in the Ascendant to IC, calculate one-third (as previously stated), then count from the Ascendant in the order of the signs, and consider these degrees and those in opposition to be powerful. Now consider the other <one-third> portion of the degrees to be average, neither completely good or bad, because this region 1) follows the Ascendant, 2) is <the III Place of> the Goddess, 3) is in opposition to <the IX Place of> the God. So then, the first third from the Ascendant will be operative and powerful, the second third will be average, the third third will be crisis-producing and bad. The stars <in these regions> will act in the same way.<sup>1</sup>

It is necessary to calculate likewise from MC, and to consider the first third of the distance between angles as operative, the second third, following MC, as of average influence (thus it was called Good Daimon by the ancients), and the last third, up to the Ascendant, as afflicting and inoperative. The Places in opposition to these will have the same force. Orion expounded all this in his book.

---

<sup>1</sup>This section reads very differently from Schmidt's translation!  
MAJOR ANNOTATION NEEDED



### 3.3 The Vital Sector

/136K/ Some astrologers, moved by envy or ignorance, have written elaborately, obscurely, and simple mindedly about the vital sector. These men have made forecasts by adding, in every case, the rising times of the degrees from the aphetic place to the point square with it. In view of this error, we find it necessary to clarify the method of determining <the length of life>, because we find nativities living longer than the 90° arc, especially nativities in the signs of shorter rising times, even though the Old Astrologer specifically says this is impossible.

On the other hand, /129P/ we see some nativities which do not live this 90° arc, even without the malefics' projection of rays. Therefore in casting a nativity, it will be necessary to determine if it does or does not have a houseruler, and if the ☉, the ☿, or the Ascendant is the apheta.

If the ☉ or ☿ are in the aphetic place, then it will be necessary to figure the total rising times (in the klima of the nativity) from the position of the apheta to the point square with it. Having found the total time, you can forecast that the native will live as many years. This forecast will be accurate if the houseruler is in its own terms or is configured appropriately, has contact or is in aspect with the apheta, and if no anaereta applies its rays and deducts from the number of years.

If the houseruler is not in aspect with the controller, but is otherwise found to be favorably configured (i.e. in the Ascendant, at MC while rising), it will allot the full span of years. If it is <not at> one of the other angles, it will deduct a portion of the arc proportional to its relationship <with the rest of the horoscope>, but will allot the remainder <as the length of life>.

So, in all cases it will be necessary to figure the number

of years allotted by the controller and compare them with the years allotted by the houseruler. The total will be the number of years the native will live.

If the years of the houseruler are less than those of the apheta, he will live the years of the houseruler <sup>1</sup>. The houseruler will allot the time—if the nativity has a houseruler—with some deduction of the arc from angle to angle.

If the years of the apheta are less than the years of the houseruler, the native will live the number of years allotted by the apheta and the nativity will be judged to lack a houseruler.

If the controller is appropriately situated, each one (viz. the apheta and the houseruler) will assign its own period of years.

Some astrologers figure the distance from the /**137K**/ houserulers to the angles using <only> the Ascendant and the Descendant. If they are 5 or 6 signs apart, they subtract <an appropriate> amount. I say that one should figure the houseruler's distance from all of the four angles, then subtract—if in fact the nativity is found to have a houseruler. For he says:

... If <a star> is found to be at MC, in <the XI Place of the> Good Daimon, or in some operative place, it will allot the full span of years.

So he did not subtract the appropriate amount from <just> the Ascendant or the Descendant position.

If neither the ☉ nor the ☾ are in the aphetic place, but the Ascendant or MC are, one should not figure the number of years from the aphetic place to the point

---

<sup>1</sup>Riley: This concerns the horimaea. The controller is one thing, the houseruler is another, and the apheta is another - marginal note.

square with it. <Instead> determine the number of degrees <from the apheta> to the next angle, then forecast /130P/ the years—unless some anaereta embezzles from the number of years by applying its rays.

An example: let a nativity in the second klima have  $\Pi$  8° as the Ascendant,  $\approx$  22° as MC. Even though the vital sector starts at the Ascendant, its ending point is by no means at the point square with it,  $\mathbb{M}$  8°, but at IC,  $\mathcal{Q}$  22°. I can forecast this total of years, unless some anaereta casts its rays.

If an anaereta is in  $\Pi$  20°, or in any degree of  $\mathfrak{S}$ , or projects its rays to such a point, the native will live as many years as the number of degrees <=rising times> from the aphetic point to the anaeretic point. In the same way if we make the vital sector begin at MC,  $\approx$  22°, we will not find the sum of years to be the distance from MC to the point square with it,  $\mathfrak{Y}$  22°, but to  $\Pi$  8° <the Ascendant>.

It is obvious that the vital sector can exceed 90° when using the method of signs, but it cannot exceed the distance to an angle.

Occasionally this latter method can be used with the  $\odot$  and  $\mathfrak{D}$ , in which case they will exceed 90° if they are helped by houserulers, i.e. when they have houserulers in aspect, favorably situated, and able to allot the full span. In the same example: if we start the vital sector at the Descendant,  $\nearrow$  8°, we will find the end to be at  $\approx$  22° <MC>.

In each case, after finding the aphetic place, it will be necessary to examine the distance to the next angle, and to make the vital sector extend to that position, if no anaereta intercepts.

Let this further method be regarded as mystically proven in great detail by us: /138K/ to treat the degree-

position of the apheta as <if it were> MC. With it as MC, it will be necessary to investigate (using the correct klima) which degree can be in the Ascendant. Having found this, make the vital sector extend to that point.

For example: let the aphetic point be at ♎ 12° in the second klima. If we calculate this as the Ascendant, the vital sector will extend to ♊ 13°, which is IC. But if, as we just stated, we make this point <♎ 12°> MC, we will find in the table of rising times that ♋ 28° is the Ascendant, and that the vital sector will extend from ♎ 12° to ♋ 28°.

We will find the same to be true for the rest of the nativities or signs. Likewise make the anaeretic position the /131P/ Ascendant (as with the aphetic point) and, while it is the Ascendant, examine which degree of which sign can be MC. Make the vital sector extend to that position or to the point in opposition. In addition calculate in detail the relationships of the houseruler (as we stated above), and examine the distance to the next angle, the configuration of the horoscope, and the combinations of the stars and the apheta.

An example: let the Ascendant be ♈ 18°, MC ♊ 4°, and the houseruler ♄ at <♎> 13°. I calculate the distance from it <♄> to the Ascendant as 35°, which equals 2 1/3 hours. Now since 76 is assigned as the full span of years, I divide this by 12 <hours> and find for each hour, 6 years 4 months. So for the 2 hours we find 12 years 8 months, plus (for the one-third hour) 2 years 1 month 10 days. The total is 14 years 9 months 10 days. I subtract this from 76, and the result is 61 years 2 months 20 days. (It is necessary to calculate in the same way if you subtract from the other angles.)

Having established this, now let the ♃ be the apheta at ♊ 8°. For the remaining 22° <of ♊> I assign 29 years 4 months; for the 30° of ♎, 36 years; and for the 17° of

♄, 18 years 1 month 18 days. Added, the total of the vital sector is 83 years 5 months 18 days <sup>1</sup>.

Now since the years of the apheta are more than the years of the houseruler, the native will live as many years as the houseruler, ♄, allots: 61 years 2 months 20 days. /139K/ If the years of the apheta were less than those of the houseruler and suffered a deduction because of a destructive ray, e.g. at 53 years, it would happen that the cited nativity would live only 53 years. If, however, the houseruler is found to be at an angle and rising, or happens to be in operative degrees, even though the vital sector has more years, the houseruler will allot its total span.

If the houseruler is favorably located, the destructive stars, even in conjunction or projecting their rays, will no longer shorten the length of life.

If the nativity is found to lack a houseruler in the vital sector, it will then be necessary to examine the affiliations of the anaeretic stars or their aspects, whether sextile, trine, square, or opposition. The anaeretic stars are ♄, ♂, the ☉, and the ☾ coming to a phase.

The anaeretic places of each sign are the aphetic terms and the terms of malefics.

The anaeretic degrees are considered to be /132P/ the 3° on each side of the apheta, because each 3° segment either preceding or following has the same effect as conjunction or equivalent degree-position. As a result, the degree itself <of the apheta> plus the two segments total 7° in all. Malefics projecting rays into this area become anaeretic, while benefics prevent the destruction.

---

<sup>1</sup>Riley: He is not calculating the vital sector and the MC of the moon according to *sphaera recta*, but by using the rising times of the signs - marginal note

For example: let a nativity have ♄ 12° as the Ascendant. This point will be the midpoint <of the segment ♄ 9°> to ♄ 15°. If a malefic projects rays into the arc from ♄ 9° to ♄ 15°, it will be destructive in these degrees, not only in the sign of the vital sector, but in the other signs from the apheta to the point square with it.

For example: if ♄ is the Ascendant, and if ♄ or ♂ are found at ♄ 15° or ♄ 15°, and if the vital sector comes to ♄ 12° or 13° or to ♄ 12° or 13° in the sequence of chronocratorships, there will be destructive action.

If the destructive stars are at or just following an angle, they become more active; if they are not at an angle, they are weakened. Let this method be most effective for those at an angle.

For example: ♄ is the Ascendant as cited above, and ♄ is at ♄ 13°, 12° or even 20°. Figured by signs, it just precedes MC, but since it projects its rays into an angle and into operative places (viz. into ♄, which is ♄ <with ♄>), it will be considered the anaereta. If, however, ♄ is found in ♄ 3° or 7°, it will precede an angle both by degrees and according to signs, and it will not be the anaereta. This happens /140K/ because an anaereta which projects rays from an angle into inoperative degrees which precede an angle does not become destructive. All this also applies to benefics.

3.4 The Winds of the Stars, their Exaltations, and their Steps

[Exaltations and Depressions]

Having established this, it is necessary to append the winds. First it is necessary to examine the degree in which each star is exalted; from these the determination is made:

STAR	EXALTATION
☉	♏ 19°
☿	♈ 3°
♈	♊ 15°
♊	♍ 28°
♋	♌ 21°
♌	♎ 15°
♍	♏ 27°

Each star has its depression at the point in opposition to its exaltation.

The point square with the exaltation and preceding it is called northern; the point square and following it is called southern. For example: the ☉ is exalted in ♏19°, and the point square with it and preceding is ♏19°. If the ☉ is found there, we say it is ascending north and the exaltation is exalted. From ♏ 19° to ♊ 19° it is descending north. /133P/ From ♊ 19° to ♌ 19° it is descending south. From ♌ 19° to ♍ 19° it is ascending south.

[Winds and Steps]

If we seek the step of the wind, we find it as follows: since each step has 15°, we find the distance of the star from

each degree <listed above>, then divide it by 15. For example: the ☉ is in ♊ 22°. I find the distance from ♊ 19° to ♊ 22°; this is 33°. I subtract 30° (2 times 15°), which is equivalent to 2 steps, with a remainder of 3°. So the ☉ is ascending north in the third step of that wind.

We have given this to use as an example. Note that the northern and southern hemispheres must be calculated when the rest of the winds are determined, as must the wind itself and the step also.

### *[Winds and the Apheta]*

For each nativity it is necessary to note whether the ☉, the ☿, or the Ascendant is the apheta, and which wind it has. Then examine the other stars. If any have the same wind as the apheta, they will be related and associated, especially in their own chronocratorships. In fact they will be stronger and more effective if they are rising, /141K/ at an angle, proceeding with their proper motion, and in their own sect.

If any star has a wind opposite to that of the apheta, it will oppose the apheta and will be malefic, especially at the transmission of the chronocratorship.

If the star is setting or proceeding with a retrograde motion, it will be harmful and hazardous. It will not be considered a benefic at all, even if it happens to be at an angle during this period.

If any star has a configuration with the apheta which is related in some ways, unrelated in others, it will be variable, not entirely helpful or harmful.

If the Ascendant is found to be the apheta, it will be necessary to examine the ruler of the terms, and to note which wind it has and whether it is at an angle, rising, or proceeding with its proper motion, then to compare it with the other stars.



Now some astrologers think that this procedure is useless; I say that it is most scientific and effective. In their astronomical tables, astrologers have worked out this topic in various ways, but they have not brought it to perfection.

### 3.5 The Sects of the Stars

It is necessary to examine the sects of the stars: for day births the ☉, ♃, and ♄ rejoice above the earth; for night births, below the earth.

For night births the ♅, /134P/ ♁, and ♀ rejoice above the earth; for day births below the earth.

♄ rejoices according to the sect of the houseruler in whose terms the star is located.

Consequently for day births, if a nativity is found to have ♃, the ☉, or ♄ favorably configured above the earth, this will be better than having them below the earth. Likewise <for night births> it is advantageous if the nocturnal stars are found above the earth. ♀ particularly rejoices when in the Ascendant or at MC; the rest rejoice in the Ascendant or Descendant.

### 3.6 Examples Illustrating the Previous Chapters (6K)

An example: ☉ in ♉ 29° 30', ☽ in ♋ 12°, ♃ in ♏ 27° 8', ♀ in ♉ 22° 13' <7°?>, ♂ in ♌ 7° 23', ♀ in ♉ 28° 13', ☿ in ♏ 11° 25', Ascendant in ♋ 17°, MC in ♏ 25°<sup>1</sup>.

The nativity was without a house-ruler because ♀, the ruler of /142K/ the terms of the ☽, had already set. The apheta was the Ascendant.

☿, the ruler of its <Ascendant's>

terms, was itself found just pre-

ceding the Descendant. Thus the vital sector extends from the Ascendant to the point square <♏ 17°>, and to the projection of rays on the part of ♃ into the point in opposition <to ♃: ♏27°> to ♃, which is in the terms of a malefic <♃>. ♂ deflected its diametrically opposite ray because ♀ was found in an equivalent degree and hindered the anaeretic influence.

The native died at age 69, but if ♀ trine had not hindered <this malign influence>, he would have lived only 64 years.

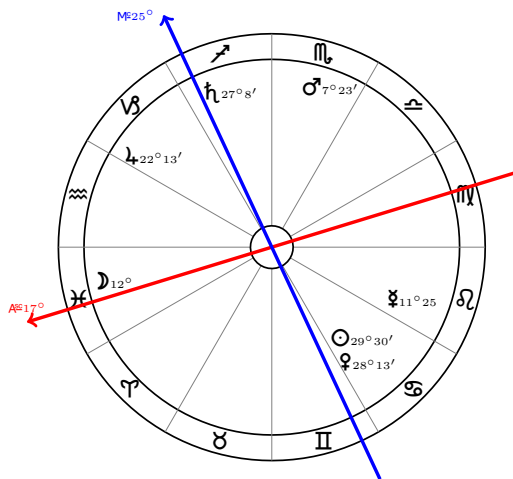


Figure 3.1: Chart 42 [III.06.1, GH L75]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L75) to approximately July 19, 75 AD (p.87)

Another example: ☉ in ♉ 25° 8', ☾ in ♊ 16° 53', ♃ in ♉ 1° 25', ♄ in ♈ 24° 18', ♂ in ♈ 21° 8', ♀ in ♋ 9°, ♁ in <♊12°>, Ascendant in ♈ 15°, MC at ☊ 16°<sup>1</sup>.

The luminaries preceded the angles <MC Descendant>, the Ascendant was the apheta in the terms of ♄, and ♄ was unfavorably situated. The nativity lacked a houseruler, and the vital sector was <from the Ascendant> to

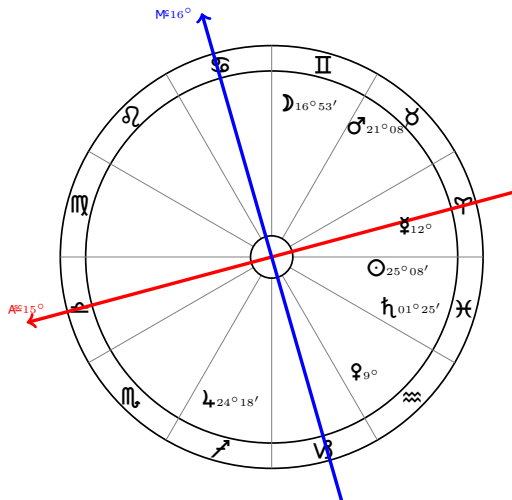


Figure 3.2: Chart 43 [III.06.2, GH L110]

♊ 21°, the point in opposition to ♂. ♂, located in the aphetic terms <of ♄> and casting rays into the same terms, was the anaereta. The native died in his 51st year.

The aphetic terms and the anaeretic terms (i.e. the terms of malefics) are not only those degrees in which the destructive stars are found or into which they cast their rays, but also those where the vital sector is in the beginning of the term <of a malefic>. In addition, it is necessary to calculate not only the chronocratorship of the sign which receives the ray, but also that of the sign which casts the ray, the sign in which the anaereta is found.

APHETIC &  
ANAERETIC  
TERMS

...

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L110) to approximately March 15, 110 AD (p.105)

### 3.7 Another Method from Critodemus about Hostile Places and Vital Sectors: from the Moon and the Ascendant.

/135P/Whenever the Moon is found to be the apheta, one must observe the <contacts> and the points which are sextile, square, and in opposition to the Ascendant with reference to their rising times<sup>1</sup>. These will be considered as effective, especially when they are in signs of the same or equal rising times, signs of the same power, the listening or beholding signs, or the degrees of the antiscia.

Likewise if the Ascendant is found to be the apheta, then it will be necessary to examine its distances <=aspects> with respect to the Moon according to rising times. My experience indicates that /143K/ the fatal degrees and the powerful degrees are those at MC, those at the Ascendant and the Moon by themselves, and those in opposition <to these points>. If they are at an angle, they have an extraordinary influence.

FATAL  
DEGREES

---

<sup>1</sup>Presumably to learn the years the points will be active.

### 3.8 Hostile Stars and Critical Places. The First Table of Critodemus (8K,6P)

It is necessary to investigate the hostile places and stars, not only with respect to the other stars, but also for the Ascendant, the Sun, and the Moon. When they come into opposition, they indicate critical periods and death.

Take Saturn for example: note which god controls the degrees in opposition to the position of ♄, as given in the table. The native will die when ♄ is there, is square with the Ascendant, or in signs with the same rising time, depending on when the chronocratorships coincide. The same must be done for the other stars, because the rulers of the terms of the degrees in opposition are hostile. These stars indicate destruction when they come to these places or to the places with the same rising times as the Ascendant.

For example: ♄ in ♉ 21°, terms of ♀. The point in opposition is ♊ 21°, terms of ♂; ♂ was in ♌ 27°. The native will die when ♄ is in ♏, because it was square, as calculated by degrees.

♄ in ♌ 14°, terms of ♄. ♌ 14° <the point in opposition> is also in the terms of ♄, and this star does not become hostile to itself. ♏ has the same rising time as ♌, and ♏ 14° is in the terms of the ☉<sup>1</sup>. So ♄ is the anaereta when it comes to the places of the ☉.

♌ in ♌ 27°, terms of the ☉. The same position in ♌ <the point in opposition> is also in the terms of the ☉. Since the star does not become hostile to itself, I then investigate /136P/ ♏ 27° or the sign of equal rising time <with ♌>, which is ♐ according to the hourly intervals.

♐ 27° is in the terms of ♀. The native will die when

---

<sup>1</sup>Odd. The ☉ itself is usually not allocated terms (neither is the ☿).

<♂> is in ♍ or <♄>, which have the same rising times <as ♌ and ♉>, or in the signs square with them. If anyone calculates ♌ 27°, he will find it to be in the terms of ♈. ♈ was in ♎. So the native will die when ♂ is in ♎, ♈, or the signs square with them.

♀ in ♍ 27°, terms of the ☉. The point in opposition is ♉ 27°, terms of the ☉. This star does not become hostile to itself, /144K/ so I investigate ♍ 27°, of equal rising time, which is in the terms of ♎. The native will die when ♀ is in ♍, where ♎ was, or in the signs square with it. The same procedure should be followed with respect to ♎.

In casting horoscopes for patients struck down by illness, it is necessary to examine the places in opposition, the stars in the hostile places, and the stars causing the monthly, daily, and hourly critical periods, with respect to the degree-position/sign of the Moon in which the opposing star is found.

...

The vital sector will be considered as starting from the Sun, the Moon, or the Ascendant, or from the star found following the Ascendant, then the other <stars> in sequence in order of sign and degree at the nativity, making the determination <of the chronocrators> by the 10 year 9 month system.

### 3.9 Winds and Turns (9K,6P)

The arrangement some have made of the terms using the seven-zone system, i.e. 8, 7, 6, 5, 4 (and they are not in agreement even as to that) does not seem correct to me. I prefer the arrangement derived from houses, exaltations, and triangles, to wit:

♂ is the house of the ☉, ♀ is its exaltation, ♀ is the <other member [o]f its> triangle. The total is 3, and so in each sign the ☉ has 3 terms.

♂ is the house of the ♀, ♀ is its exaltation, ♀ and ♀ are the <other members if its> triangle. The total is 4, and so in the same way the ♀ has 4 terms in each sign.

♂ and ♀ are houses of ♀, ♀ is its exaltation, ♀ is the <other member [o]f its> triangle. The total is 4, and so ♀ has 4 terms in each sign.

♂ and ♀ are houses of ♀, ♀ is its exaltation, ♀ and ♂ are the <other members [o]f its> triangle. So ♀ has 5 terms in each sign.

♀ and ♀ are houses of ♂, ♀ is its exaltation, ♀ and ♂ are the <other members [o]f its> triangle. So ♂ has 5 terms in each sign.

♂ and ♀ are houses of ♀, ♀ is its exaltation, ♀ and ♀ are the <other members [o]f its> triangle. /137P/ So ♀ has 5 terms in each sign.

♀ is a house of ♀, ♀ is its exaltation, ♀ and ♀ are the <other members [o]f its> triangle. The total is 4, so its terms in each sign will be 4.

<The Order of the Terms.>

♀♂♂ by day: ☉-3, ♀-5, ♀-5, ♀-4, ♀-4, ♀-4, ♂-5.  
Total 30 by night: ♀-5, ☉-3, ♀-4, ♀-5, ♀-4, ♀-4, ♂-5.  
Total 30.



𐤔𐤌 /145K/ 𐤔 by day: 𐤆𐤇𐤔𐤓𐤓 by night: 𐤆𐤆𐤔𐤓𐤓

𐤕𐤌𐤔 by day: 𐤇𐤔𐤓𐤓𐤓𐤆 by night: 𐤔𐤓𐤓𐤓𐤓𐤆

𐤔𐤌𐤔 by day: 𐤓𐤓𐤓𐤆𐤇𐤔 by night: 𐤓𐤓𐤓𐤓𐤆𐤇𐤔.

So that you will see the accuracy of this arrangement of terms—you can also recognize it in the nature of the winds. If the ☉ is transiting its own terms, with the 𐤎 or the ruler of the 𐤎's terms in aspect, the physical nature of the star will manifest itself in the wind. For instance: if the ☉ traverses its own terms with the 𐤎 in aspect, it will blow westerly. If 𐤆 traverses its own terms, it will blow southerly and dry. If 𐤇, it will blow westerly and bring moisture. If 𐤌, it will be northerly and wet. If the 𐤎, it will be northeasterly. If 𐤆, southeasterly and there will be shifting winds and storm clouds. If 𐤔, there will be westerly and northerly winds, shifting and bringing heavy rains, thunder, and lightning.

If any of the stars are in aspect with the ☉ and the 𐤎, it is necessary to watch closely—in addition to the nature of each luminary—which phase the 𐤎 is passing through, i.e. full or new, and in whose terms the phase is located. Then make your forecast with reference to the ruler of the terms and of the stars in those terms or in aspect.

.../138P/

### 3.10 From the Books of Valens Concerning the Numerical Lot and the Length of Life. The Same Author on the Topic of Propitious Times, with Examples (10K,7P)

There is another numerical method, which King Petosiris has mystically explained, suitable for determining the length of life and the propitious and impropitious times. As a result, whenever we find the controller or the house-ruler <configured> appropriately, we will use the method described above for the allotment. If we do not find them to be such, we will use the following method.

PETOSIRIS

It will be necessary to determine if the nativity happened at new or full moon. If it happened at new moon, determine the number of degrees from /146K/ the new moon to the position of the Moon at the delivery itself, then count this distance from the Ascendant in the order of the signs. The ruler of the term where the count stops will be the houseruler of Life and of the vital sector.

If the nativity is at full moon, it will be necessary to determine the degrees from the Moon's position at the delivery to its position at the next new moon. Then count this distance from the Ascendant, not in the order of the signs, but in the direction of diurnal motion (towards MC). The ruler of the term where the count stops will be considered the houseruler. It will be necessary to examine it and the sign where the count stopped to see which <luminary> is more closely related to it, the Sun for masculine <signs>, or the Moon for feminine <signs>.

If the sign where the count stopped happens to be related to the ☉ when the ☉ has control, and if the ruler of the term is also in harmony with the ☉ and happens to be favorably configured with the ☉, then it will allot the maximum number of years.

If this sign is found to be related (i.e. male, as would be appropriate for the ☉), and if the ruler of the term is opposite the ☉, precedes the Ascendant, or is in ecliptic places, then it will become the anaereta of the chronocratorship, or it will allot the minimum number of years. (The masculine signs belong to the ☉; the feminine to the ♀.) Consequently it will be necessary to examine how the ruler of the term is configured with respect to the controller and with respect to the ruler of the sign. If it is found to be in its own sign or in operative signs, the length of life will reach its maximum. If it is found to be favorably configured with respect to one, but unsuitably configured with respect to the other, it will allot the mean number of years.

If the houseruler of the sign where the count stopped is unsuitably configured with respect to the controller and the /139P/ operative sign, being either turned away or in <the XII Place of the> Bad Daimon, then the nativity will lack a houseruler. In such a case it will again be necessary to examine the control of the Sun and Moon.

If the rulers of the term and of the sign are configured well and harmoniously with the ☉ and ♀, then the vital sector will be considered as starting at the degree of the term.

Generally speaking, in this method it will be necessary to examine the houseruler with reference to the influences of the angles, as was demonstrated for the horimaea: it may be rising, setting, at an angle, not at an angle; it may switch positions with the ruler of its sign or be inharmonious with it. Use these facts to make your judgement.

Likewise <it will be necessary to> look at the rays of the anaeretic stars and to check if the vital sector starts at the beginning of the terms or at the end. It is necessary to consider all of this /147K/ in order to calculate short- or long-lived nativities—or even the nativities of twins,

because often if a malefic term rules the vital sector or if the houseruler is unfavorably situated, the first-born becomes short-lived, but the next-born, if the term or the houseruler changes, becomes long-lived and a foundation for his existence arises. Consequently, a change of one or two degrees often has a very great effect.

An example: ☉ in ♈ 25° 18', ☾ in ♊ 7° 10', ♄ in ♎ 24°, ♀ in ♈ 4° 25', ♂ in ♋ 22° 53', ♁ in ♌ 28° 16', ☿ in ♌ 6°, Ascendant in ♏ 27°<sup>1</sup>.

Since this was a full-moon nativity, I took the distance from the ☾'s position <at birth> to the next new moon, which was at ♌ 2° 25'. The distance is 115°. I subtract this from the Ascendant and stop at ♎ 2°.

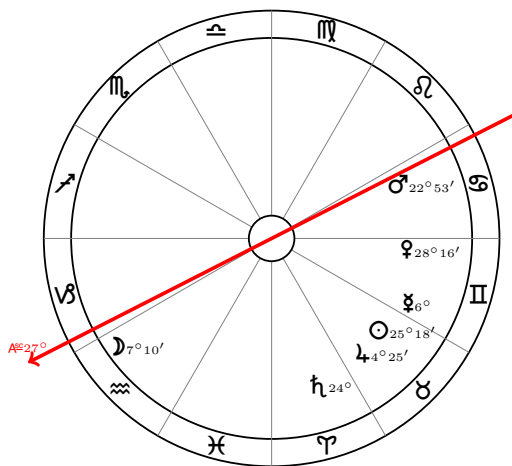


Figure 3.3: Chart 44 [III.10.1, GH L114]

vital sector stretches from this point to the radiation of the malefics. ♄ casts its rays from a point in opposition and ♂ from a point square with the same degrees <in ♎> and cause death. ♄ was turned away; ♁ was unfavorably situated and unable to help. The native lived 28 years 9 months.

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L114,V) to approximately March 13, 114 AD about 10 p.m. (p.110)

/140P/ Another example: ☉ in ♈  $12^{\circ} 16'$ , ☾ in ♈  $17^{\circ} 24'$ , ♄ in ♌  $11^{\circ} 33'$ , ♀ in ♌  $19^{\circ} 11'$ , ♂ in ♍  $4^{\circ} 20'$ , ♀ in ♌  $26^{\circ}$ , ☿ in ♍  $27^{\circ}$ , Ascendant in ♌  $20^{\circ}$ <sup>1</sup>.

I take the distance from the degree of the new moon to the ☾'s position <at birth>; this is  $5^{\circ}$ . I count this from the Ascendant and stop at ♌  $25^{\circ}$ . The vital sector stretched from there to the position of ♂, ♍  $5^{\circ}$ . The native died in his twelfth year. If this encounter <with ♂> had not happened, he would have lived the years of ♀, 84.

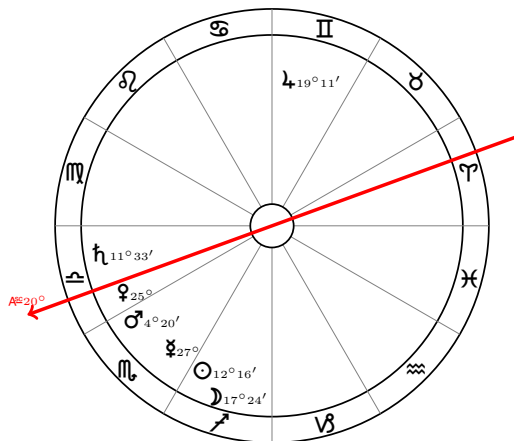


Figure 3.4: Chart 45 [III.10.2, GH L127]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L127,XI) to approximately Nov. 23, 127 AD about 3 a.m. (p.110)

### 3.11 The 7-Day and the 9-Day Methods for the Critical Period (11K,8P)

We will now report what the King has revealed about the critical point: take the number of days from the rising of Seth<sup>1</sup> to the date of birth. /**148K**/ Divide the total number of days by  $52 \frac{1}{7}$ . Now multiply the <integer> answer of this division by the remainder, and examine the result of this multiplication to see if it is less than the particular number of the critical point. As a sample, let the number of days be 220. I divide  $52 \frac{1}{7}$  four times <into 220> for a result of  $208 \frac{4}{7}$  days, with a remainder of  $11 \frac{3}{7}$  ... <I multiply  $11 \frac{3}{7}$  times 4, and the result is  $45 \frac{5}{7}$ .> ... We call this the critical 7-day number. <The King> tells us to examine this number to see if the number of the critical point is less than the number of years.

Take the example just cited: if the basis of the nativity's length of life is 47, but the critical point falls in year 45, the native will be destroyed then, since the value of the critical point was less than the years of the basis. <The King> has said that if the 7-day number is a factor of 9, the situation will be inharmonious. For example: this 7-day number <45> contains the factor 5, the result of a division by 9. When this is multiplied by 9, it yields 45. Therefore the 7-day number is a factor of 9. But if the value of the critical point is <not> less than the number of years <of the basis>, and if the previously mentioned considerations are true, it will not be able to reduce the allotted time. Instead the native will live the assigned period. If the situation is harmonious, the critical point will take precedence over <the number found by> the preceding method.

We claim that the method of multiplying by  $5 \frac{1}{4}$  and then proceeding using this factor in the same way is

---

<sup>1</sup>Riley: The Dog Star <Sirius> in Egyptian - marginal note.

more economical than multiplying by 52. Having found the number, one should investigate the 9-day number, to be sure that the 7-day number is not a factor of it.

/141P/ (Some astrologers do not like to start the year with the rising of Sirius. It is possible to use any given starting point in citing an example, since we see that men begin the year differently in the different latitudes. Still, let us assume that the system in which the calculation starts with the rising of Sirius and proceeds to the birth date is more scientific. Most use this as the beginning of the year. Let this method of determining the 7-day week be the most efficient.)

Some think it proper to investigate the 7-day and the 9-day week for night births, the 9-day week for day births. The results are similar for both methods since the 7-day weeks will be with reference to Mars, the 9-day weeks with reference to Saturn. In either method, /149K/ they will have an exchange of critical points. Saturn will be the beginning of the 7-day week because of the ☉ and ♃. Mars will be the beginning of the 9-day week. This is because ♄ and ♋ (♋'s houses) are opposite, in the seventh place, to ♅ and ♎ <houses of the ☉ and ♃>, and ♊ <♊' house> is the ninth sign from ♎, and ♉ is the ninth sign from ♋ <♊' house>. But it would be more scientific to derive these from the exaltation of the ♃ in ♈: the beginning of the 7-day week would be ♊, because of ♋; the beginning of the 9-day week would be ♋, because of ♄.

An example: the nativity was in Hadrian year 3, Athyr 27 in the Alexandrian calendar<sup>1</sup>. Investigate the subsequent date Antoninus year 17, Phamenoth 11.

<sup>1</sup>Riley: Athyr 27, Phamenoth 11 in the Alexandrian calendar; November 22, March 27 in the Greek calendar; Tybi 1, Pharmouthi 11 in the Egyptian calendar. I think this is a recasting of a natal horoscope of Athyr 27, Alexandrian years. An Alexandrian month has 30 days. If you subtract 28 days (i.e. 4 weeks) from each

I take the full years, 35, plus the 3 remaining days in the birth month <Athyr 27 to 30>, plus 2 days for each month from Choiak to Mechir <3 months>. <The total is 44.> With the whole weeks <4 weeks=35 days> subtracted, the remainder is 9. Now add the 11 days of Phamenoth (total 20), plus the 8 intercalary days. The grand total is 28. Let Phamenoth 11 be a critical day in the 7-day week system. According to the sequence of days, Phamenoth falls in **Ṣ**. Examine which stars are in aspect with this signs and with the **Ḍ**.

The 9-day week is found as follows: I multiply the full years by  $5 \frac{1}{4}$ , since each year contains forty 9-day weeks with  $5 \frac{1}{4}$  days left over. For each month I add 3, since each month has three 9-day weeks with 3 days left over. I total the remaining days until the day in question and I divide by 9 (making sure that the remainder is less than 9.) Now the result will be the number of the critical day, just as in the 7-day week system. It will be necessary to calculate the month and year in the same way.

/142P/ In the 7-day week system, the critical signs are **Ṗ**, **ⲁ**, **᠖**, **᠔**; in the 9-day week system **᠔**, **᠔**, **᠓**, **᠔**. Common to both systems are **᠓**, **᠔**, **᠓**, and **᠔**. /150/

---

month, there are 2 days left. So, there are 3 days left of Athyr, 2 days each for Choiak, Tybi, and Mechir (viz. 6 left after subtracting 12 weeks). The total so far is 9 plus 11 days of Phamenoth, for a total of 20. The intervening 35 years make 8 quadrennia, which he calls "intercalary." Total 28. This topic is most clearly presented in Dorotheus' Epic, Book V, Chapter 138. - marginal notes



### 3.12 The Method of New and Full Moons. Conception with Reference to the Ascending Node. Length of Life, with Examples (12K,9P)

I am reminding you of my generosity in supplying proofs for every chapter so that I do not seem to be writing this in order to obfuscate. Now if you rush to the books of the older compilers, be aware that their texts have been adorned with an affected style which can bewilder the minds of their readers and of the ignorant, although their texts have not attained the truth and are enemies of the wise. Wasting the time of many men and leading them astray, these texts have defrauded some of life and have terminally afflicted others. Let anyone read the so-called *Vision of Critodemus*: how its beginning is so fantastical and how the rest is so marvellous to the unlearned. “Coursing the deep,” he says, “and traversing vast wilds, I was deemed worthy by the gods of attaining a safe harbor and a secure anchorage.” Then with frightful oaths he expounds his methods and his transmissions. He sanctifies his readers in other ways and displays much bombast throughout the book, such as it is. He indicates that its powers control everything <with its prodigious learning>, but he locks up in infinite verbiage the truth of his teaching. This man should be praised and admired, since he has gone through so much labor and has become a guide for seekers. Indeed, by arranging his material mystically and complexly in tabular form and in connected prose, he has attracted many enthusiasts, some of whom have ignored his useless bombast, have tracked down the relevant chapters with great toil, and have brought praise and credit to the man. Others with a less tenacious spirit, have brought criticism to this art. My exposition will (as I think) be persuasive and educational for my readers, and they will not regret their work. /143P/ Through the influence of what has been and will be said, I hope

CRITODEMUS

to bring back into the fold those who have come to hate their role <as student>.

Since the casting of rays—either houseruling or destructive—has now been set out as previously outlined, /151K/ I want to share, not to hide, the method for the Numerical Lot and the anaeretic, powerful places, now that I have tested them.

First of all, it will be necessary to determine for every nativity whether it has a controller or a houseruler. If it is found to have one, it is necessary to use the previously mentioned terms. If however the nativity is found to be lacking a houseruler or a controller, and is destroyed by no afflicting ray, then it will be necessary to determine the degree of the previous new or full moon (for night and day births) and to count from the new or full moon “upward” (=in the direction of diurnal motion) to the Ascendant or to another angle, or (which is more powerful) to the ascending or descending node. Then having noted the number of degrees, count this amount from the Ascendant in the direction of diurnal motion (=toward MC). Where the count stops, calculate the total number of years from the apheta (using the rising times of the native’s klima), then make your forecast.

If, for a day birth, the number is excessive, subtract the distance between the new or full moon and the ascending or descending node from the distance between the angles, i.e. between the Ascendant and MC, then do your operations in the same manner, counting the remaining degrees from the Ascendant to MC in the direction of diurnal motion.

For night births, take the distance from the new or full moon to the ascending or descending nodes or a center (in the direction of diurnal motion), then count that distance from the Ascendant in the order of the signs. Calculate the years where the count stops, using the rising times,

and make the forecast. If the number is excessive, subtract the distance from the Ascendant to IC, then count the remainder from the Descendant in the order of the signs (i.e. toward MC). The total, calculated from the rising times, will be the length of life.

In most cases, it is necessary to place the vital sector starting with the Ascendant or with the Descendant at the point to which the ascending or descending node inclines, or to which the new or full moon inclines, (i.e. whether in the hemisphere above the earth or towards the one below): if the nativity is at the new moon, start with the Ascendant; if full moon, with the Descendant.

If the Ascendant, the ascending node, or the descending node is found in the sign of the new or full moon, or in the signs in opposition or square with them, /**144P**/ then for day births count the total distance from the Ascendant, for night births from the Descendant in the order of the signs. /**152K**/ The point square with the ascending node has an anaeretic force—of course, the exact-to-the-degree vital sector which starts at the ☉ and ☾ and runs to the ascending node and to the points in opposition or square with the node <?>.

Occasionally, when there is a controller or a house-ruler, the anaereta coincides with the apheta or the house-ruler and strengthens the destructive force. If in such a case the controller is suitably situated, and the apparent house-ruler is distributing the chronocratorship, then the vital sector of this horoscope (whether counted in the direction of diurnal motion or in the order of the signs using the total of the rising times) will be considered as characteristic of one who dies at birth or in the womb.

The same considerations should be applied when forecasting conception, but the Ascendant at the time of delivery must be observed.

The conception itself will be in vain if someone ob-

serves the new or full moon extending to the ascending or descending nodes or to the angles.

If the same number of years are found to be granted when you calculate from the delivery and from the conception, then death will indisputably occur.

### 3.13 How the Position of the Sun, the Moon, and the Ascendant at the Conception Can Be Accurately Found (13K,10P)

We will explain an economical method for finding the latitude.

For every nativity, the sign square with the ☉ is the sign of the conception. (Occasionally the sign of conception will be trine when the ☉ happens to be at the end of its sign, especially in a sign of short rising time; the sign of conception may be sextile for signs of long rising time.)

Assume the position of the ☾ at the conception to be the same as the position of the Ascendant at the time of the delivery, and from this you can know whether the conception was at new or full moon.

An example: ☉ in ♊, ☾ in ♋, Ascendant in ♏. At the conception the ☉ was in ♈, the ☾ in ♏. It is clear that the conception was at new moon, for the ☾ (i.e. the Ascendant) had not yet come into opposition to the position of the ☉ at the conception.

If the Ascendant at the delivery is found to be past its opposition to the ☉ at conception, the conception will be at full moon.

It is necessary to establish the vital sectors for the conception in the same way as was explained for the delivery. In most cases a native whose conception was at new moon /145P/ will die at full moon; one whose conception was at full moon will die at new moon.

/153K/ Another <topic>: having determined in which sign the <preceding> new or full ☾ occurred, count the degrees from that point in the order of the signs to the ascending node. Then count the total distance from the Ascendant “downwards” (=in the order of signs) for

day births, in the direction of diurnal motion (=towards MC) for night births.

If, however, the ascending node is at MC, it is necessary to count the distance in degrees from MC, in the order of the signs towards the Ascendant for day births, in the direction of diurnal motion towards the Descendant for night births.

If the ascending node is at the Descendant, count the distance from the Descendant to MC for day births, to IC for night births.

If the ascending node happens to be at IC, then count the distance in degrees in the direction of diurnal motion from IC towards the Ascendant, if the birth is found to be during the day; for night births count toward the Descendant from IC.

For example: the ascending node at  $\Pi$   $23^\circ$ , the <preceding> new moon at  $\text{♌}$   $8^\circ$ , the Ascendant at  $\text{♌}$   $4^\circ$ , MC at  $\text{♊}$   $13^\circ$  <sup>1</sup>.

I take the distance from the new moon to the ascending node; this is  $105^\circ$ . I count this from the Ascendant (since it was a day birth) and stop at  $\Pi$   $19^\circ$ . For the second klima the total is approximately 79 years, <4> months. The native lived that long.

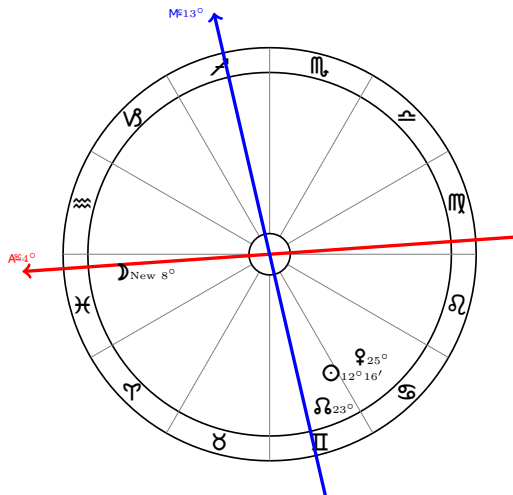


Figure 3.5: Chart 46 [III.13.1, GH L75,I]

I have explained the systems which I myself have used. I have investigated nativities, observing if two, three, or more of the previously mentioned factors coincide, yielding the same result, and through this investigation I have made infallible forecasts of deaths. As a result it is not without plan, not at random, that I have explained that each method is quite practicable both by itself and when combined with another. If anyone sticks to these methods, he will find a true forecast of the subjects in question to be within his grasp.

Now we have written some parts of our work mystically, leaving something to the discrimination and the judgement of our readers. In doing so we have not been led by malice or stupidity, but by our wish to supply the

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* gives the chart as L75,I to but can't date it accurately due to discrepancies (p.89)

student with point of interest and opportunities for long discussion. For <we know> that if anyone attains his longed-for goals without being challenged, he considers it a trivial gift, but one who attains them after a toilsome search engages in his activity not only with pleasure but with success.

/154K;146P/ An example: ☉ in ♈ 1°, ☾ in ♊ 16°, Ascendant in ♈ 14°, the <previous> new moon in ♎ 27°, the ascending node in ♋ 25°<sup>1</sup>.

I counted in the direction of diurnal motion from the position of the new moon to the ascending node; the distance is 92°.

I counted this distance in the direction of diurnal motion from the degree-position of the Ascendant and came to ♊ 12°.

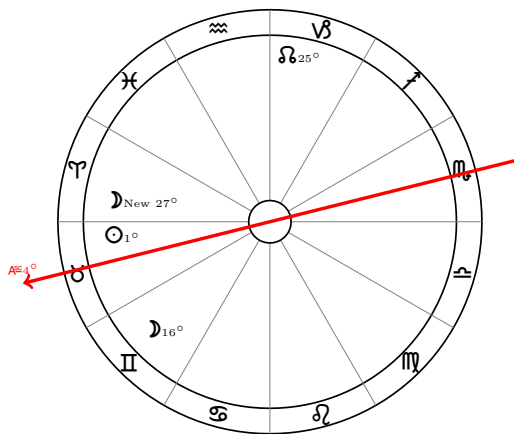


Figure 3.6: Chart 47 [III.13.2, GH L74,IV]

The 92° total for the klima of Alexandria equals 70 years. The native died in the first month of his seventieth year.

The method according to the conception is as follows: since the full moon <preceding> the conception was at ♋ 21° ... which is close to the year we found previously.

<sup>1</sup>Greek *Horoscopes* dates the chart (L74,IV) to approximately April 19, 74 AD (p.86)



Another example: ☉ in ♊ 29°, ☾ in the beginning of ♉, Ascendant in ♈ 18°, the <preceding> n[e]w moon in ♊ 26°, the ascending node in ♎ 16°<sup>1</sup>.

I counted the distance from the new moon in the direction of diurnal motion to the degree-position of the Ascendant; the distance is 38°. I counted this in the order of the signs from the

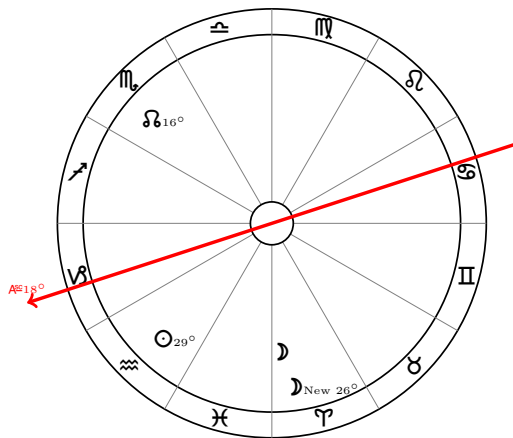


Figure 3.7: Chart 48 [III.13.3, GH L115,II]

degree-position of the Ascendant. The years total very nearly 33 in the first klima. He lived 32 years 5 months. The place of the conception did not contain the apheta because the full moon of the conception and the ascending node happened to be at the same degree-position. Therefore he had a dangerous birth and a violent end.

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L115,II) to approximately February 15, 115 AD (p.112)

### 3.14 The Lot of Fortune and its Relationship to the Topic “Length of Life,” with Examples. Included are the Minimum Periods of the Stars (14K,11P)

I have found this system for <finding> the length of life to have been elaborated in a very complicated manner by the ancients. After investigation, I have modified their doctrines in view of my experience, and I think <my explanations> will please most <of my readers>.

In his thirteenth book, after his preface and his descriptions of the signs, the King introduces the Lot of Fortune <and its derivation> from the ☉, the ☿, and the Ascendant. He considers it to be the greatest, and he mentions it throughout his work, calling it the “Ruling Place.” He makes a great mystery of its “forward and reverse”:

The Sun, starting in the dawn and declining to his western arc, opens <to us> the vault of the cosmos, as can be seen. When night arrives, the Moon will not always become the Lightbringer, but sometimes /155K/ it appears in the West, setting, sometimes it stays in the heavens for quite a while, at other times it travels the entire night. As a result, the whole circle <of the zodiac> has rightly /147P/ been entrusted to the Sun’s care.

There are a variety of opinions about this notion. To me it seems best to locate the Lot by determining the distance from the ☉ to the ☿, then counting that distance from the Ascendant—for day births.

For night births <1> if the Moon is above the earth, i.e. until the time it sets, determine the distance from it to the ☉, then count that distance from the Ascendant.

<2> After the moon has set, determine the distance from the ☉ to it.

As for the king's final statement: "The whole circle <of the zodiac> has been entrusted to the Sun's care," this seems correct.

It will be necessary to examine the place where the Lot is located, and to consider that place to be the ruler. Then determine in which sign the ruler of the sign <of the Lot> happens to be located. Third, determine that sign's houseruler. From these three places and from their houserulers the native's length of life will be found by using the three factors.

Each star controls its own period:

Planet	Years
♄	30
♅	12
♆	15
☉	19
♀	8
♁	20
♂	25

Each <sign> also controls its own rising times according to the <nativity's> klima. Accordingly it will be necessary to determine for the <correct> klima whether the Lot is at an angle and operative, or whether it just precedes or follows an angle.

Also determine the houserulers of the signs. The Old Astrologer reminds us of this when he says:

Each star, when at an angle, allows the full amount of its times. When not at an angle,

it grants its allotment after some deduction from its own numbers.

These stars allot the full term of their periods and their rising times when they are favorably situated. The fellow members of their sects, when in conjunction, in aspect, or in their own signs, add to the allotment, unless both sects in fact join in the allotment. Thus the <Old Astrologer>.

First it is necessary to calculate the numbers: hours, days, months, then years. Then use the three factors, minimum, mean, maximum, adding the first to the second, or the second to the third.

It often happens that one place allots the days, another the months, another the years, all according to the differences among the operative signs and the houserulers, or of the baneful influences and setbacks.

After allotting the years, they also allot /**156K**/ the same number of months to their chronocratorships.

In the distribution <of years> Daimon and the Ascending Place will have the same effects as the Lots whenever the places of the Lots or their rulers are unfavorably situated, particularly when the Lot of Fortune cedes the distribution to Daimon. (Stars can indeed yield to each other; we will show how in a future chapter on the allotment procedure.)

/148P/ Examples: ☉, ♀ in ♉, ☽, Ascendant in ♋, ♄ in ♊, ♀ in ♉, ☿ in ♎, ♄ in ♉, the Lot of Fortune in ♉ which is in Good Daimon <=the V Place of Good Fortune><sup>1</sup>.

The ruler of the Lot <moon> was found at an angle. I set down the minimum period for the ☽, 25 years, plus the rising time of ♉ in the second klima, 32 years, plus the period of the houseruler of the ☽, ♄, 12 years. The total is the same <as in Book III.6K>, 69 years. The native died at that age.

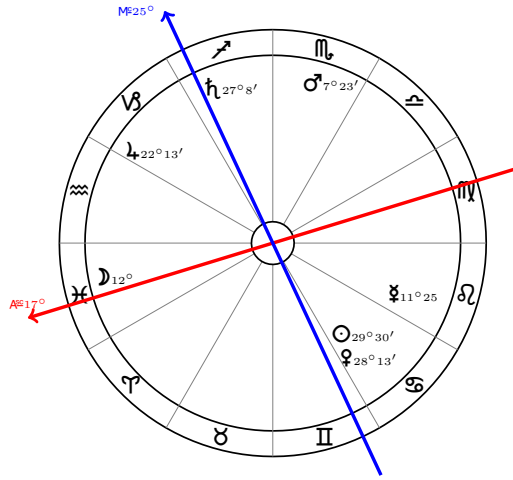


Figure 3.8: Chart 42a [III.14.1, GH L75]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* chart L75 used in section III.6

Another example: ☉ in ♊, ☽, Ascendant in ♏, also ♂; ♄, ♀, ☿ in ♏, ♀ in ♏, the Lot of Fortune in ♊ just preceding an angle <Descendant> <sup>1</sup>.

Its ruler  
<♄> in <the  
V Place of>  
Good Fortune,  
not in its own  
sect <diurnal;  
the nativity is  
nocturnal> al-  
lots its own 30  
year period plus  
the same num-  
ber of months,  
since it is in its  
own sign. ♄,  
also in this sign,  
allotted one year <12 months>. The native died in his  
34th year.

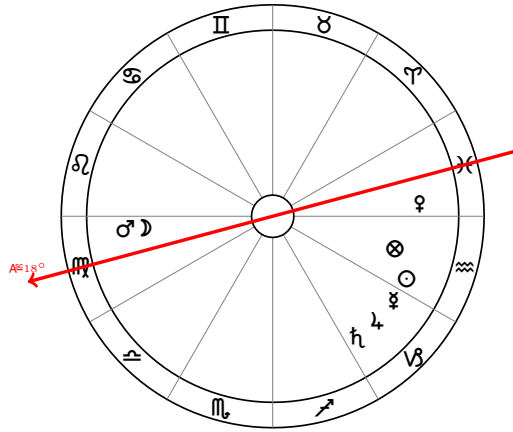


Figure 3.9: Chart 49 [III.14.2, GH L135]

For every nativity the rules of procedure laid down previously, the phases, and the degrees, must be observed. <I say this> so that we might not seem to be repeating the same reminders with each new topic. For this reason I consider it necessary to cite sample nativities.

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L135) to approximately January 20, 135 AD (p.126)

**3.15 Critical Years (15K,12P)**

Following are the critical point with respect to the Lots, especially if malefics are in conjunction or in aspect with Fortune:

Position of Malefic	Every <i>n</i> Years
in ♄	7
△ on the right	9
△ on the left	5
□ on the right	10
□ on the left	4
✕ on the right	11
✕ on the left	3
in the sign preceding the Lot	12
in contact with the Lot	2

Position of ☉	Every <i>n</i> Critical Years
♈	9
♉	22
♊	20
♋	25
♌	12
♍	8
♎	30
♏	15
♐	12
♑	8
♒	30
♓	15

/157K/

**The Mean Years of the Stars (15K,13P)**

Following are the mean years of the stars:

Planet	Years
♄	45
♅	49
♆	42
♇	46
♈	48
♉	64
♊	67

The stars allot /149P/ these years plus their periods or the rising times of their signs whenever they happen to be operative.

Another system of mean years: you will find the mean years by adding the maximum and the minimum periods. For example: the complete period of ♄ is 57 years and the minimum is 30, for a total of 87, half of which is 43 1/2. The complete period of ♅ is 79 and the minimum is 12, for a total of 91, half of which is 45 1/2. And so on for the rest of the stars.

Now the rising times of the signs in the Tables of Rising Times of Hypsicles are in error if the period <in question> amounts to one or two years ... but the King has revealed the rising times only for the first klima.



An example: ☉, ♀, ☿ in ♉, ☽ in ♋, ♄ in ♌, ♀ in ♍, Ascendant in ♎<sup>1</sup>.

In the first klima the rising time of ♎ is 38 1/3. Since ♄, the ruler <of ♎>, is in ♉, in <the XI Place of the> Good Daimon, it contributed its rising time, 31 2/3. The total is 70; the native lived that long.

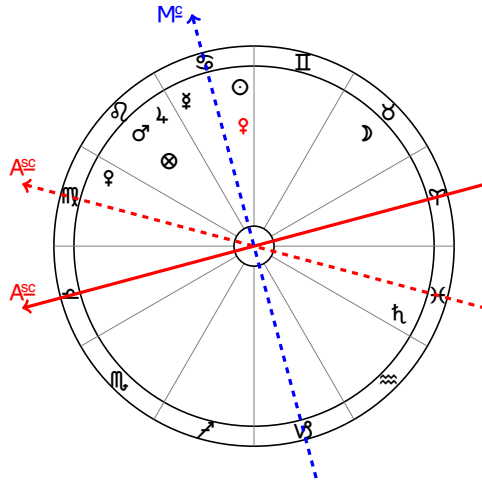


Figure 3.10: Chart 7a [III.15.1, GH L82]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L82) to approximately July 9, 82 AD (p.92). This is actually Chart 7 from Book II, section 21, with some differences (errors) in the placement of the Ascendant and ♀. Robert Hand, in a footnote to the chart in Schmidt's version, says the errors do not affect the methodology being described (VRS *Vettius Valens: The Anthology Book II (concl.) & Book III.* p.72).

Another example: ☉, ☿ in ♈, ♃ in ♋, ♏ in ♌, ♎, ♍, ♂, ♀ in ♍, Ascendant in ♈<sup>1</sup>.

The rising time <of ♈> in the second klima is 28. ☿ in ♈ adds its rising time, 24, plus ♂ and ♀ in ♍, 15. He died in his 67th year.

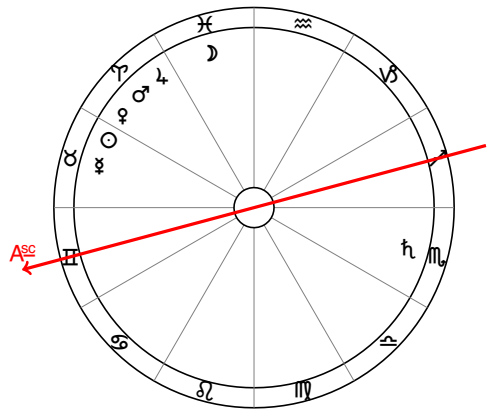


Figure 3.11: Chart 50 [III.15.2, GH L102, IV, a]

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L102,IV,a) to approximately April 30, 102 AD(p.100)

Another example: the same configuration of stars <as in the preceding horoscope> for a different nativity, except that the Ascendant was in  $\mathbf{V\beta}$ , the Lot of Fortune in  $\mathbf{\text{H}}$ <sup>1</sup>.

The rising time <of  $\mathbf{\text{H}}$ > in the second klima is 20, plus the period of  $\mathbf{4}$ , 12. Since  $\mathbf{4}$  is in  $\mathbf{\text{P}}$ , we add its rising time, 20, plus the period of  $\mathbf{\sigma}$ , 15. The total is 67. He lived that long.

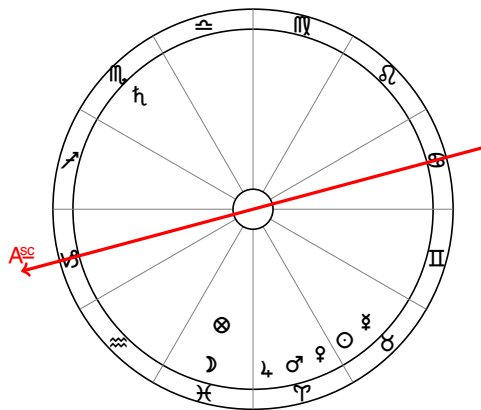


Figure 3.12: Chart 51 [III.15.3, GH L102, IV, b]

These chapters which I have composed may seem unprofessional because they have been addressed to a youthful audience, my students, in such a way that they might find my introduction to this art comprehensible. In view of this fact, I had wished to revise them for greater accuracy, but I have not had the opportunity because my vision has been troubled and my intellectual capacity has been enfeebled by my deep sorrow for a precious student who has died. May the reader pardon me.

End of the *Anthologies* of Vettius Valens of Antioch, Book III.

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L102,IV,b) to approximately April 30, 102 AD(p.100)

4.1 The Distribution of Periods

We believe that we have set forth an appropriate, in fact, magisterial, explanation of the previous <theorems>. We will now reveal a topic investigated by many and hidden from view, namely the distribution of propitious and impropitious times. We must preface our discussion with the distributions which have been proven by our own experience. The primary period is one-fourth of the minimum period, as follows:

Star	Period	$\frac{1}{4}$ Period	Days/Years
ћ	30	$7\frac{1}{2}$	<85
ł	12	3>	34
♂	15	$3\frac{3}{4}$	$42\frac{1}{2}$
♀	8	2	$22\frac{2}{3}$
☿	20	5	$56\frac{2}{3}$
☼	19	$4\frac{3}{4}$	$53\frac{5}{6}$
♃	25	$6\frac{1}{4}$	$70\frac{5}{6}$

Altogether, the “fourths” total 32 years 3 months.

## 4.2 The Vital Sector

For new-moon nativities, the <star> located first after the new moon begins the vital sector, then the other stars as they come in the order of signs.

For full-moon nativities, the <star> following the full moon serves the the same capacity.

It is necessary to examine how the star is configured and which stars are in aspect. /**159K**/ Also determine if the other stars that receive <the chronocratorship> are at angles or precede angles, or are rising or setting. Determine the sequence of their transits and their sympathies and antipathies.

After the 32 year 3 month period is completed, the second cycle is begun starting with the <next> aphetic star of the one-fourth period.

### 4.3 The Distribution of Days

Make the distribution of days as follows: if **h** is found to be the overall apheta, it assigns 7 1/2 years.

Now since it is necessary for all the stars to take part in the distribution of this <7 1/2 year period>, we will do as follows: multiply the 85 days of **h** by 7 1/2 to get a total of 637 1/2. This is the amount **h** will allot to itself from its 7 1/2 years.

Now let us find the amount for **l**: since it governs 34 days, multiply this 34 by 7 1/2 (since **h** is the apheta), for a total of 255. **l** will have this many days of **h**'s chronocratorship.

Next in order **q** receives the chronocratorship: since it controls 22 2/3 days, we will multiply this amount by 7 1/2, and we will find the total 170. **q** will control this many days of **h**'s chronocratorship. And so on with each star: if we multiply its days by 7 1/2, we will find its allotment <in **h**'s chronocratorship>.

If the **d**, on the other hand, controls the vital sector, we multiply each star's days by 6 1/4 <to find its distribution>. Similarly for the rest.

### To Find the Days of Each Star

The days of each star are found in this way: double the star's period, then take one-half, then one-third of the period. After adding all these figures together, we will find the days.

The period of **h** is 30 days; I double this for a total of 60. One-half of 30 is 15; I add this to 60 for a total of 75.

One-third of 30 is 10; I add this to the 75 for a grand total of 85. **h** will have this number of days. Likewise for the rest of the stars.

#### 4.4 The Distribution of the Chronocratorships Starting with the Lot of Fortune and with Daimon.

/160K/ I will now append this truly powerful method: to begin the vital sector with the Lot of Fortune and with Daimon (which signify the ♃ and the ☉).

Universally speaking, the ♃ is fortune, body, and spirit, and when it sends its emanations to us from its position near the earth, it causes appropriate effects, since it rules our bodily constitution.

The ☉ is the cosmic mind and divinity. It arouses men's souls to action through its own energy and love-inspiring nature, and it becomes the cause of employment and progress. So, if we are investigating the chronocratorships with respect to bodily existence, such as /152P/ critical points of illnesses, hemorrhages, falls, injuries, diseases, and whatever affects the body with respect to strength, enjoyment, pleasure, beauty, or love affairs, then we must begin the vital sector with the Lot of Fortune.

Whenever the <first> chronocratorship ends, at that point we calculate the sign, the stars in conjunction or aspect, how the stars are configured with respect to the overall houseruling star of the vital sector's chronocratorships, and whether the rulers of the Lots are at angles or not.

If on the other hand we are investigating employment or rank, then we will begin the chronocratorships with Daimon as the apheta. We will make our determination according to the benefics or malefics in conjunction or aspect with it.

Note that if the Lot of Fortune or its ruler are badly situated, the Lot of Daimon will distribute both the bodily and the active qualities. Likewise Fortune will make the distribution of both qualities if the Lot of Daimon or

its ruler is unfavorably situated, and the same is true of the controls and the houserulerships.

Whenever Daimon and Fortune are found in the same sign, we will derive forecasts of bodily constitution from that very sign, but the forecasts of activity from the sign immediately following. In addition we can <use> the same apheta for new or full moon nativities, since at those times the Lot <of Fortune> and Daimon fall in the same sign, but when we investigate the chronocratorships in such nativities with respect to physical health, we will start the vital sector at that very sign, but the chronocratorship with respect to activity at the one immediately following the Lot. This is particularly true for night births or for those nativities which have the new moon at IC and as a result have the angles <Ascendant Descendant> square with the Lots.

The results of a new moon are better than those of a full moon because at a new moon the Lots are in the Ascendant, /161K/ at full moon they are in the Descendant. It also happens that if the luminaries are square with each other, the Lots are in opposition to each other, and under this configuration some astrologers allot the chronocratorships for activities beginning with the signs immediately following <the Lots>. This however does not seem right to me, because <usually> the Lot of Fortune is found at a different place from the Lot of Daimon, although they are at the same place for new and full moon nativities.

In addition, for male nativities, the vital sector is usually found to begin at Daimon, since these nativities share in activities consisting of discourse, giving and receiving, and trusts. For female nativities it begins at the Lot of Fortune because of their bodily functions. (But even men happen to accomplish things through bodily activities, i.e. handwork, athletics, and bodily motion, and



women accomplish things through buying and selling.) Similarly for infant /153P/ nativities it is necessary to begin the vital sector with the Lot of Fortune until <the time when> the nativity can show evidence for its full development or its occupation. Bodily excellence accompanies these <infant> nativities at birth, i.e. beauty, loveliness, size, elegance, fine proportion, or—which is more usually the case—the opposite: injury, disease, rashes, eruptions, pustules, or congenital defects such as birthmarks and hernias. The active and intellectual qualities come into play later.

For example: assume that the Lot of Fortune or Daimon is located in ♃. The overall houseruler <of ♃> is ♂. Determine if ♂' successors are or are not configured properly. ♂ itself allots 15 years first, and from this period it assigns itself 15 months. Next (because of ☿) it assigns 8 months to ♀, next (because of ♀) 20 months to ☿, next (because of ♀) 25 months to the ♀, next (because of ♀) 19 months to the ☿, next 20 months to ♀, next 8 months to ♀, next (because of ♀) ♂ assigns itself 15, next (because of ♀) 12 to ♀, next (because of ♀) 2 years 3 months to ♀. Next it assigns to ♀ the remaining 11 months to fill out the 15 years.

Now ♀ receives from ♂ the overall chronocratorship for 8 years and assigns years to each sign as described. /162K/ Because of ♀, ♀ receives 20 years after ♀ and assigns the years to each sign. Next is the ♀ with its 25 years, then the ☿ with its 19.

It is necessary to assign the years in the order <of the stars> to whatever date the nativity extends <=lives>.

Now since the circle of the 12 signs has comprised 17 years 7 months, we will allot the remaining time using the signs in opposition: since ♀ allots 20 years, if the vital sector begins there and if 17 years 7 months have been assigned, the remaining 2 years 5 months are allotted

beginning with ♈, giving ♈ itself 1 year <=12 months>, the rest to ♉ to complete the 20 years.

In a similar manner, if we find the vital sector beginning with ♋, ♌, ♍, ♎, or ♏, after allotting the 17 years 7 months (not counting the intercalary days), we will allot the rest in order, beginning with the sign in opposition.

Some astrologers allot the remaining chronocratorships beginning with the sign in trine, but this does not seem scientific to me. Just as in the universe the four /154P/ elements are in sympathy with each other, and each becomes alive and grows when linked with another, so in the distribution <it is necessary to> make the transmission from sign to sign, according to the harmony among them. For instance, since fire and air are upward-trending elements, they mingle with each other. Fire, a dry element, is nourished by the mildness of the air, while on the other hand, fire does not allow the air to take on an icy or dark nature, but renders it warm and mild. In the same way it is logical that ♌, the fiery sign, transmits the period remaining from its chronocratorship to ♎, the airy sign, with which it is in sympathy, and in turn, ♎ transmits its period to ♌.

Another instance: earth, a dry element, is nourished by moisture and gives birth to everything, while water, distilled from the earth and thus born from it, maintains the sympathy <between the two>. So it is logical that ♋, a moist sign, and ♎, an earthy sign, mutually transmit to each other, as do ♍, an earthy sign, and ♏. The rest of the signs show the same interchange with the sign in opposition.

And so the sequence of distributions is written in the order of zodiacal signs: ♏—fiery, ♌—earthy, /163K/ ♎—airy, ♋—watery, and the signs trine with these are of the same nature. Consequently if we make the connection within the triangles, we will find the nature of the

transmitter and the receiver to be the same. No blending will be found, and each element will be overpowered by itself. If we use the other method, we find that the ☉ begins its course at the equinoctial tropic in ♍ and makes the days long for one hemisphere. Then, making the connection in ♊, it begins to shorten the days. <The ☉> in ♋ stops the pattern of lengthening days, and when it is in ♏, it causes this to happen to the night, making its change in the sign in opposition. Likewise the ☾ becomes new, waxes, then in its cycle makes the connection <=full moon> in the sign in opposition. As a consequence I believe we should use the method described above for making connections.

### 4.5 Making Connections. The Mutual Transmissions of the Stars.

The connections made will have differing effects because of the nature of the stars: the Sun and Moon when transmitting to Saturn /**155P**/ are indicative of setbacks and anxieties, and they bring hostility from the great and threats due to old religious matters, losses, trials, confrontations, suspicions, dubious livelihoods and ranks, ruin, as well as bodily disorders and dangers, shipwrecks, sudden collapses, and very many crises—all this unless a benefic in conjunction or aspect weakens the onset of the crisis.

Mercury when transmitting the chronocratorship to Jupiter from **♿** or **♄** brings changes in business and innovations in activities. If the places or **♿** itself are afflicted at the nativity, and if the overall chronocratorship is contrary, the connection which is made will turn affairs to the better and will be indicative of employment. On the other hand, if the places are protected by benefics and are bringing a good chronocratorship, after <one> cycle the connection which is made will be disturbing and harmful.

Saturn making the connection from **♄** and **♊** to **♄** and **♋** /**164K**/ indicates that the chronocratorship will be vigorous: it brings matters from darkness into the light, and since it is transmitting the distribution of the chronocrators to the ruling signs, it is most active—depending on the basis of the nativity. It also supplies rank and profits in a way appropriate to the stars in conjunction with it...

#### 4.6 How Many Years Each Sign Allots. The Maximum Years of Each Star.

Aquarius allots 30 years, Capricorn 27. The reason: the ☉ rules a maximum period of 120 years, half of which is 60. Half of this, 30, is assigned to ♊, the sign in opposition <to ♋, the ☉'s sign>.

The Moon rules a maximum period of 108 years, half of which is 54. Half of this, 27, is assigned to ♎, the sign in opposition <to ♈, the ☾'s sign>. The total for these two signs is 57, which is the maximum period of ♎.

The rest of the stars take their maximum assignment of years from the ☉ and the ☾. The ☉ assigns to ♈, which is a member of the same sect <diurnal> and which has sympathy with the ☉, being a member of the same triangle <♈-♊-♉>, half of its 120 years plus the length of its minimum period, 19 years. The total for ♈ is 79 years. The ☾ allots to ♈ in the same way, because they are both benefics and both are in cosmic sympathy, ♈ being in ♈, in the same triangle <as ♈, the ☾'s sign>. The ☾ allots half of its 108 years, 54, plus its minimum period, 25. The total is also 79.

/156P/ The ☾ allots to ♊, a member of the same sect <nocturnal> 54 years. The ☉, however, refuses to allot to ♊ because of ♊' fiery nature which imitates <the ☉> and because of its malefic ways, and so the task of allotting passes to the next ruler in the triangle <♈-♊-♉>, ♈, and it allots its minimum period, 12 years. The total is now 66 years.

Likewise the ☾ allots to ♎, because of its nocturnal sect and because of the sympathy derived from being <exalted in ♈> in the same triangle <♈-♊-♉>, its 54 years, and ♎ allots 30 years, because its exaltation in ♈ is opposite ♎'. The total is 84 years.

♎ gets the maximum period, 57 years, from ♎, because

they are co-houserulers <in the triangle  $\mathfrak{M}$ - $\mathfrak{V}$ - $\mathfrak{S}$ >, plus  
the minimum period of the  $\odot$ , 19. The total is 76.

#### 4.7 The Distribution of the Chronocratorships Using the Lot of Fortune and Daimon. The Transits of the Stars and Houserulers. The New and Full Moon, with Examples. Mutual Transmission.

/165K/ This having been established, it will be necessary to examine the transmitter and the receiver of the distribution to see if they are at an angle or are preceding an angle, or if they are in harmony or are contrary.

If the distribution, when calculated by sign, is from a place at an angle to another place at an angle, and if at the same time, the houserulers of these places are at angles, in the same sect, and have benefics in aspect, they bring a noble and distinguished chronocratorship.

If the places are at angles, but their rulers precede angles or have malefics in aspect, they indicate that the chronocratorship will be disturbed, subject to ups and downs.

If every relevant point is found to be preceding an angle, the chronocratorship will be terrible, bringing charges and penalties; the native will be involved in travels and changes in activities during these periods.

If under these circumstances <the transmitter and the receiver> are benefic or have benefics in aspect, the native will gain profit and attain success in business abroad, but if they are malefic, he will be entangled in disturbances and penalties abroad or be betrayed by foreigners or slaves. (Therefore we say that the points preceding the angles are indicative of foreigners.)

If <the transmitter and the receiver> are found at the angles and in their proper places they indicate delays in certain places <abroad> or residence there: ☿ and ♀ cause residence abroad which is not long or extended, since these stars are never far from the ☉. ♃, ♂, and the

☽ indicate that the native will live dangerously abroad on land and sea, wandering or living in alien climes.

The ☼ indicates /**157P**/ a glorious, honored, and amiable native.

♄ indicates that the native will live abroad comfortably and pleasantly with many friends.

If a star which is controlling the chronocratorship relevant to health is passing through a sign which is not at an angle, or if its ruler is not at an angle and has malefics in aspect, the native will be sickly, subject to bleeding and dangers.

If a star which is controlling the chronocratorship <of the matters> governed by Daimon <=occupation> is not at an angle and has a malefic in conjunction or in aspect with the houseruler of its sign, the native will act ineffectively, will be unfortunate, and will be mentally unstable and ruined in his activities and enterprises.

If the star controlling such a chronocratorship is found in a fiery sign /**166K**/ with malefics in conjunction or in aspect, he will suffer a great nervous breakdown, and will act against his own will, being mentally unstable.

If the star is in an airy sign or if the sign or its ruler are afflicted, the native will be distracted and troubled, and will suppose that he is accomplishing something other than what he really is.

If the star is in an earthy sign, he will bear the blows of fortune nobly, and will survive most things philosophically because of his endurance.

If the star is in a watery sign, the native will have a mind which can be easily reassured, will come into vicissitudes in many affairs, but will manage to succeed and be successful in his dealings.



In many cases predictions about specific activities are to be derived from Daimon and its houseruler. Some men are involved in bodily activities (e.g. handicrafts) or in physical toil (e.g. as porters or in training). Others have activities involving speech, knowledge, or mental effort. To whichever place, Fortune or Daimon, the majority of stars incline, in that place the type of activity will be revealed.

It is necessary to take into consideration the activities and the basic character of the nativity (noble, average, fortunate, poverty-stricken, disputed, subject to ups and downs) so that the results of the allotments may be quite obvious. Some stars forecast activities: ♂, ♀, ☿. ♄ forecasts personal talents, plus whatever happens through moist substances, labor, and legacies.

The chronocratorships from ♄ and ♂, with ♃ not in the configuration, are considered to be base and humble.

The chronocratorships are noble and prosperous when derived from the ☉ and ♃ with benefics in conjunction or in aspect from the right.

If the distribution goes from Daimon to MC (MC relative to the Lot of Fortune) or to the Lot itself, and if the ruler <of Daimon> is there, with /158P/ benefics, the ☉, or the ♃ in aspect, and if the basis of the nativity is full of glory, the native will come to power and great rank, and will be distinguished, ruling, and prominent in those chronocratorships. He will be called blessed by many because of his prosperity.

A distribution which comes at the Ascendant, at MC, or at the other angles forecasts high rank, but not to the same extent, because the places square with the Lots are most efficacious.

If the transmissions occur as specified, and if the basis of the nativity is found to be average, the native will be

involved in occupations and profits; he will be a friend of great men; /**167K**/ he will be thought worthy of gifts and offices. He will live happily and successfully in proportion to the level of his occupation, especially if benefics are in conjunction or in aspect.

If malefics are in aspect, the influence of the places will be visible in the manner just described, but because of the malefics in aspect, the native will meet with reverses and penalties, and will experience only transitory benefits from the benefics.

Each star is located in the zodiacal circle according to its house. In a similar way, each star becomes associated with another by its configuration at the nativity.

GENERAL

## 4.8 A Compelling Example

Consider a sample nativity: ☉, ♀ in ♋, ☽, Ascendant in ♈, ♄ in ♈, the <preceding> full moon, ♄ in ♋, ♂ in ♌, ♀ in ♌, the Lot of Fortune in ♌, Daimon in ♌<sup>1</sup>.

I am investigating the native's 70th year. I count the chronocratorships relevant to health from ♌ <the Lot of Fortune>, first giving ♌ 19 years, then ♌ 20, then ♌ 8, then ♌ 15. The total is 62 years. In these years he had many critical periods, falls from heights, and broken limbs <sup>2</sup>.

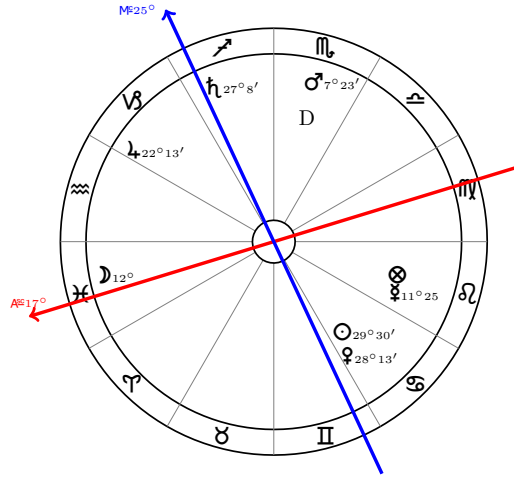


Figure 4.1: Chart 42b [IV.08.1, GH L75]

I count off the remaining 8 years in ♈, ♄ being there, not in its own sect. In these years he endured shipwrecks and bodily disorders. We learn the cause of the injury from the sign which the ruler of the Lot was found to be traversing: the Lot was in ♌; the ruler of the Lot, the ☉, was found in ♋. Now ♋ indicates the breast and stomach, and so we say then that the cause of the injury was from ♋.

/159P/ Now he takes the allotment of years and converts it to 360 days. (After calculating the 5 1/4 days

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L75) to approximately July 19, 75 AD (p.87). Also in Book III sections 6 and 14.

<sup>2</sup> ♂, ruler of accidents, injuries, is in ♌.

separately, add them to the years.) He gave ♄ 1 year, ♀ 2 years 3 months, ♁ 2 years 6 months, ♃ 1 year, then ♅ the remainder <2 years 3 months> of the 9 years. ♂, the current ruler of the chronocratorship for health, brings death, having received the chronocratorship from ♄ located in ♄: /168K/ he died diseased in the stomach and afflicted with coughing. The Place of Death was in ♃, with the ♄ there also and ♄ in superior aspect, which caused the dysentery. In addition the ruler of the <preceding> full moon, ♄, was turned away and caused the type of violent death. But the injury to the stomach and the cough resulted from the fact that the ruler of the Lot, the ☉, was found in ♁, and ♁ indicates breast and stomach.

Now I considered the chronocratorships for occupations, beginning with ♄, <=Daimon>, giving ♂ (which was in ♄) 15 years, then ♄ 12 years, with ♄ in that sign. Until age 27 he was a vagrant, subject to ups and downs. His considerable property was squandered by his guardians, for the <11th> Place of Accomplishment was in ♄ and no benefic was in aspect, but ♄ was in opposition.

Next ♀ received the distribution of 27 years; ♄ was there, in <the XI Place of the> Good Daimon, and it was in opposition to and beheld by the ☉ and ♀. During this entire chronocratorship he had great success and was entrusted with public and royal affairs. He became a friend of governors and kings and became accordingly rich, but experienced setbacks and ups and downs in the course of time as a result of the malefics which received the allotment or were in aspect. His wealth was transitory because ♄ was found to be retrograde and in its depression <♀>. ♁ received the distribution of the chronocratorship <at age 54> after ♀, with ♂ and ♄ in aspect and the benefics turned away. He ended his career and lost much through misplaced trust: he undertook pledges for relatives and

slaves, through whose carelessness and poverty he fell into debt and was found abjectly poor, because the whole basis of the nativity aimed in this direction.

♊ took 2 years 6 months, then ♋ 1 year, then ♂ 1 year 3 months, then ♀ 8 months, then ♄ 1 year 8 months. At that point his affairs went into a great decline. Next the ♃ received 2 years 1 month. During this period he seemed to recover some of his pledges and to get the help of friends.

/160P/ Next the ☉ received 1 year 7 months in ♏, and ♄ 1 year 8 months in ♏. Since malefics were in aspect with the Places <Accomplishment, Fortune> and with ♄, he was ruined during this chronocratorship. The Lot of Fortune /169K/ was found to be preceding an angle <the Descendant>, and the ruler of the triangle of the ♃ <♄-♋-♏> was ♂.

Following ♄, ♀ received 8 months, then ♂ 1 years 3 months, then ♃ 1 year. This was the end <69 years 4 months>.

#### 4.9 The Universal Year. The Year with Respect to the Distribution: How Many Days It Has and How It Must Be Calculated.

Since the universal year has  $365 \frac{1}{4}$  days, while the year with respect to the distribution has 360, we subtract the 5 intercalary days and the one-fourth of a day, then we find the number of years. Only then will we make the distribution. (We calculated in this way for the previous nativity.)

For example: a person in his 33rd year was born on Tybi 15; we are investigating Messori 20 of his 33rd year. I multiply 30 years times the 5 <intercalary> days for a total of 150. Now I add 10 <intercalary days> for the two complete years <31, 32> plus one-fourth of 32 (=8) for a total of 168. Next I take the number of days from Tybi 15 to the day in question, Messori 20 (=215), and I add this amount to 168 for a grand total of 383. From this sum I subtract 360, and the remainder is 23. So the nativity will be in its 33rd full year with respect to the distribution, plus 23 days. I consider this number of years and days when making the distribution of the chronocratorships.

4.10 The Breakdown into Longer and Shorter Periods: the Years, Months, Days and Hours of Each Star. The Use of These Periods in Nativities.

By taking one-twelfth of the year (or of each period) we can discover how many days each star/sign allots. For example: ♄ allots 15 years. One-twelfth of 15 years is 15 months. Next one-twelfth of 15 months is 37 1/2 days. Next one-twelfth of 37 1/2 days is 3 1/3 hours. <♄> allots these time-periods during its period of rule. The allotments of the other stars will be found in the same way. If anyone uses this system, he will find the overall, the yearly, and the monthly chronocrators, as well as the daily and hourly chronocrators. We will append the time divisions for each star worked out in detail so as not to confuse /170K/ our readers:/161P/

Star	Years	Months	Days	Days+Hours
☉	19	19	47½	3 days 23 hours
♌	25	25	62½	5 days 5 hours
♍	30	30	75	6 days 6 hours
♊	27	27	67½	5 days 15 hours
♈	12	12	30	2 days 12 hours
♉	15	15	37½	3 days 3 hours
♊	8	8	20	1 day 16 hours
♋	20	20	50	4 days 4 hours

If we find a nativity it its 50th or 60th year, we begin the zodiacal vital sector of years from the Lot of Fortune or from Daimon, assigning to each star its period as far as it applies. Then we assign the months, then the day and hours. If the nativity is an infant's, we begin by assigning the hours of the vital sector, then the days and months.

For example: ☉, ☿, in ♊, ♈, ♀ in ♌, ♂ in ♍, ♀ in ♎, ☽ in ♏, Ascendant in ♌, the Lot of Fortune in ♈, the Lot of Daimon in ♊<sup>1</sup>.

Let the vital sector start at the Lot of Fortune in ♈. It is necessary to investigate the fourth year, Mesori 16, including the 5 <intercalary> days of each year. Since 12 <years> for ♈ would leave

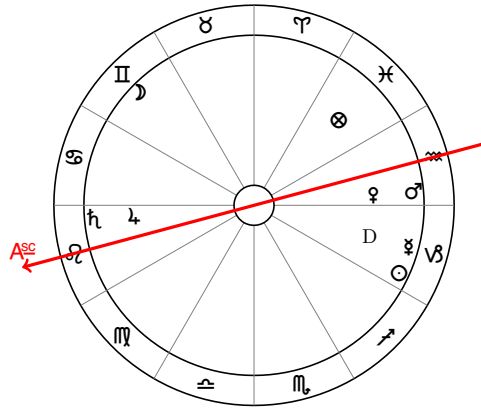


Figure 4.2: Chart 52 [IV.10.1, GH L152]

no allotment remaining, I have assigned 1 year <=12 months> to ♈, 1 year 3 month to ♉, 8 months to ♊. The total so far is 2 years 11 months. Then the allotment passes to ☿, 1 year 8 months, to total 4 years 7 months. But the nativity has not yet completed this length of time, so let ☿ be the chronocrator for a period of 8 months 15 days, a total of 255 days. It is necessary to allot this amount continuing <to count> in the order of the signs. First ☿ gives to itself (i.e. to ♏) 50 days, then to ♐ 62 1/2 days, then to ♑ 47 1/2 days, then to ♒ 50 days, then to ♓ 20 days. The total so far is 230 days, with 25 remaining.

Now ♂ will have these 25 days in ♌, after ♀'s days <in ♌>, until the completion of 37 1/2 days. Therefore ♂ will allot the 25 days proceeding in the order of the signs. First it allots to itself 3 days 3 hours, then to ♍ 2 1/2

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L152) to approximately December 27, 152 AD (p.128)



days, then to **∇** 5 days 15 hours, then to **≈** 6 days 6 hours, then to **✕** 2 1/2 days, then to **∩** 3 days 3 hours, and to **♂** the rest <1 day 21 hours> to complete the 25 days.

The overall chronocrator is **♄** <**✕**>; the second is **♂** <**∏**>, receiving the allotment from **♄**; the third is **♂** <**♍**>, receiving it from **♂**; the fourth is **♀** <**♄**>, receiving it /**171K**/ from **♂**. For the nativity it will be necessary to examine /**162P**/ where these stars are located and how they are configured with each other; having done this, then make your forecast<sup>1</sup>.

If the overall chronocrator is found to be a benefic, the **☉**, or the **♃**, it brings fame and leadership for the nativity, or prominent offices, benefits, and association with the great.

In those chronocratorships when a malefic receives the distribution (according to the system of allotment), it brings about bodily infirmity and dangers.

If another star which is in opposition to the overall chronocrator or is inappropriately configured at the nativity and in transit receives the days, it brings upset, anxieties, and penalties.

If at the nativity the overall chronocrator happens to be unfavorably situated or is beheld by malefics, in the days assigned to those malefics the native will be ruined, fall into danger, or suffer crises. But if, when these malefics receive the chronocratorship, the overall chronocrator is found in operative signs and has benefics in aspect in transit, although embarrassed in livelihood or rank <during the period of the malefic>, the native will <later> live undisturbed.

---

<sup>1</sup>Riley: Some astrologers allot the days using the triangles - marginal note.

In distributing the days, when you have completed the whole cycle of days (=528), it is necessary to begin the remaining days starting with the sign in opposition. In the same way for the lesser time-periods, i.e. the days and the hours—after the completion of the cycle of days and hours (=44), count off the remaining days and hours in the order of the signs from the sign in opposition.

### 4.11 The Operative Year and the Method of Fractions.

After outlining the particular characteristics of the overall chronocrators and those of the shorter time periods, I must now speak about the operative year and matters associated with it—but first it is necessary to speak a few words about those who have written on these topics.

Most have expounded their views on the distribution of the chronocratorships in a very complicated and hateful manner, and they have not taught a valid system. They have fenced in this topic with many devices, and have left their readers a legacy of the greatest error and of futile investigation. Others, carried away in their ignorance by this mass of words, /172K/ have added false systems and have deceived many. Still others, who saw the power of this science and who laid a foundation, did not add examples, because of their grudging spirit. We, however, traversed many lands /163P/ and came to Egypt, where we fell in with avaricious teachers. We paid them money because of our enthusiasm for the work, but we did not come upon the truth. So, choosing an ascetic and independent life, we occupied ourselves with other matters. But this problem of concern to the greatest of the mathematical sciences, viz. the distribution of the overall chronocratorships, drew us back and made our enthusiasm greater, and we came to consider an detailed treatment of the topic a necessity.

Since quarrels have arisen about the general method of distributing—some using the method of following the sequence of terms, others using the minimum periods, others using the dodekatemoria (which total 10 years 9 months), others using the exaltations, all of which methods of distribution falsify the results—I thought it disgraceful to limit forecasts to “year 2” or “year 10” or “year 7,” and I thought it best to investigate the chronocrator-

ship for any year or part of a year. As a result, we have spent much time in painful labor, we have considered in painstaking detail the effects of the changing of places, and we have made experiments in close association with those who are eager for such knowledge. Eventually God of his own accord, through his providence, made clear the transmission to a given place, <giving this knowledge> through the help of a learned man. We received this as a basis, we added much labor, and we gained our goal, which we now possess, having ourselves added many useful procedures. For it is from our daily experiences, from the contributions of many men, and from our personal acquaintance with syndromes that we have compiled our divinely-inspired and immortal theorems, and we have shared them without stint, since this topic seems to be the most essential prerequisite for the remaining parts <of astrology>. Without it there neither is nor will be anything; it contains the foreknowledge of the beginning and the end. I adjure you, my most precious brother, and you, initiates into this mystic art, by the starry vault of heaven and by the twelve-fold circle, by the sun, the moon, and the five wandering stars by whom all of life is guided, and by Providence itself and /173K/ Holy Fate, to preserve these matters in secret and not to share them with the vulgar, but only with those worthy of them and able to preserve and requite them as they deserve. I adjure you to bestow on me, Valens, your guide, eternal and noble fame, particularly since you are aware that I alone ungrudgingly illuminated this part of the truth which had never before been explicated by anyone. Do not put aside my name and attach another's to this compendium. Do not blot out any of what has been /164P/ or will be written here, with the result of nullifying my readers' efforts and of bringing discredit on me. May the previously mentioned gods be well-disposed to those who guard these things: may their lives be prosperous, and may the consummation of their plans be as they wish. May the op-

posite happen to those who foreswear this oath: may the earth not be passable, the sea not be sailable, may they have no offspring of children, may their minds be blind and fettered, and may they lead shameful and unsuccessful lives. If after death there is a recompense for good or evil deeds, may they suffer the same there also.

Therefore, if after learning the doctrines taught here, anyone finds this system mysteriously set forth in another treatise, he must not award praise to that treatise, but he must show gratitude to us as not only the reporter but also the discoverer of many things and the perfecter of the system—for many men receive directions without stint, but give them grudgingly. Therefore I encourage those who have just met with this compendium, who are just entering the heavenly places, who are surveying for a time the dancing places and the mysteries of the gods, and who are gaining god-like glory—these I urge to lay aside the many schemes of systems and books, to become proficient in the scientific, tabulated theorems of the stars and signs and in the operations which use the tables of visible motions, and to stick to these methods which have already been prescribed. I urge them to observe the position of the stars in degrees when necessary for determinations to the degree, to observe their positions by sign when that level of accuracy is appropriate, so that what is said will have been said truly. (Often I myself have noticed that a star is in one sign with respect to the temporal determination of transits, but in another sign with respect to visible motion, especially if the star is at the beginning or end of a sign. The same variations are possible at stationary points and at opposition to the sun.) Consequently, it is necessary to make the determination <of the chronocrator> only after first discovering in which signs or degrees the stars—and particularly the Ascendant—are located.

/174K/ Let us start our exposition from this point:

when investigating the current year of a nativity, we divide by 12. Count the remainder from a star which is able <to transmit> to a star which is able to receive. In this way we will discover to what sign the year transmits. What I have said is easy to comprehend but complicated to determine since all the stars, plus the Ascendant, the ☉, and the ☿, can transmit to and receive from each other. /165P/

Let us take an example so that we may make an intelligent beginning:  $\odot$ ,  $\text{♀}$  in  $\mathbb{W}$ ,  $\mathfrak{D}$  in  $\mathfrak{M}$ ,  $\mathfrak{h}$  in  $\mathfrak{E}$ ,  $\mathfrak{k}$  in  $\mathfrak{A}$ ,  $\text{♀}$  in  $\mathfrak{V}$ ,  $\sigma$ , Ascendant in  $\mathfrak{M}^1$ .

We are investigating the 35th year. I divide <35> by 12, for a result of 24, remainder 11. We note which stars are separated by 11 signs: we find 11 signs from the Ascendant and ♀ <in ♏> to ♁ in ♎; additionally 11 signs from the ☽ <in

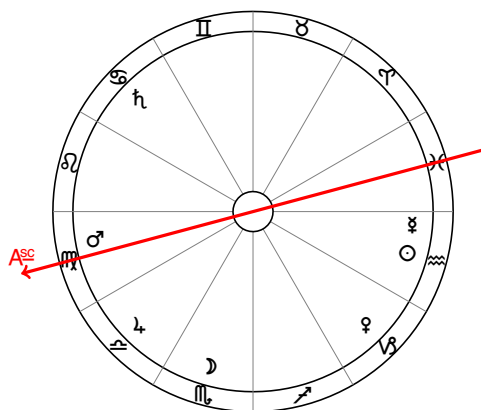


Figure 4.3: Chart 19a [IV.11.1, GH L120]

All of these transmissions are effective in the 35th year. Whatever predictive force each star has, it will predict appropriately, good or bad, in the transmissions which we have outlined in the preceding discussion. Whenever there are many transmissions, it is necessary to take into account whether benefics or malefics predom-

<sup>1</sup>*Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart (L120) to approximately February 8, 120AD (p.116). Also used in Book II, section 30.

inate. Award the prize to whichever group does predominate. If neither does, the year should be judged as varied and changeable.

To find the overall influence in any nativity, it will be necessary to count the years from the ☉, the ☽, and the Ascendant, and if the count ends at an empty place, then they <☉☽ Ascendant> will be transmitting to the rulers of these <empty> signs. These three figures have great influence, whether the transmission is to benefics, to malefics, to the angles or operative places, or to places not at the angles.

Next it will be necessary to investigate the transmissions of the other stars: if malefics control the year, but the three aphetas have a benefic effect, then the year will be vigorous and distinguished, after some doubt, anxiety, and annoyance.

If no star transmits to another, and if the distribution is to empty places, then it is necessary to note the empty places: especially if any stars are there in transit, they will receive the distribution. It is also necessary to count from the Lot of Fortune, from Daimon, from Love, and from Necessity, for it is from these points that the critical illnesses, benefactions, and dangers are apprehended.  
/175K/

But it is more scientific to count from the angles, because what is true of the general and cosmic is also found to be true of men. Starting with the rising of Sirius, the year and the four angles rotate through the quadrennium. The years, however, become varied because of the differing configurations, phases, and occasional transits of the stars. Likewise the ☉ has four motions (a maximum, a minimum, /166P/ and two mean motions), and directs its course through the four tropics.

There are four astronomical forms of the ☽: new, quarter, full, second quarter. The universe and the earth it-

self is composed of the four elements and the four winds <=directions>. If all this is so, then it is necessary for the four angles to be operative in <all> nativities, and it is necessary to count the years from them, and to make judgements from them about the stars at birth and the particular influences of the angles and signs.

It is necessary to know ahead of time the universal conjunction <of ☉ and ☾>, the rising of Sirius, the Ascendant (if the Ascendant is at a tropic point), and the ruler of Sirius' rising—because this <star> is considered the overall houseruler of the year. (The cyclical rulers are the rulers of the Places. Likewise for each nativity or each later recasting, the ruler of the year is the overall houseruler; the rulers of the new and full moons are the cyclical houserulers.)

It is necessary to determine if the overall (i.e. universal) ruler is favorably related to the overall ruler of the nativity, or if it is the same. Likewise determine if the universal (i.e. cyclical) rulers are in harmony, or if they are the same. Moreover, the places of the nativity in which eclipses happen (i.e. in operative or inoperative places), plus the risings and phases of the stars, must be noted, because it is from these that distinguished, governing, and royal nativities derive their distinctive differences in occupation and glory; it is from these that great and marvelous forecasts usually come, carrying some to unparalleled fortune, others to a lowly and easily-ruined condition. (Let no one think we are rambling on and unnecessarily complicating our system. No, we do this for the sake of securely knowing that our determinations will be unassailable for both noble and average nativities.)

In addition, when we investigate the length of life and bodily or mental activities, we count from the Ascendant. On the other hand, when we investigate rank, preeminence, magnificence, the father, great personages, and



whatever other matters are usually influenced by the ☉'s nature, we will start the year count with the ☉. /176/

For forecasts of dangers to health, diseases, bleeding, or the mother, we will start with the ☿.

For forecasts of occupations, livelihood, and work, we will start with MC.

For forecasts of good fortune and success in life, we will start with the Lot of Fortune.

For forecasts of mortality, change, or trouble, we will start with the Descendant.

For forecasts of estates, possessions, secret matters, legacies, we will start with IC.

For forecasts of /167P/ women, love affairs, associations, or the category “female,” we will start with ♀.

For forecasts of military or public matters, we will start with ♂.

For forecasts of bankruptcy, money or property, secret diseases, or family inheritance, we will start with ♄.

For forecasts of rank, friendship, alliances, and possessions, we will start with ♃.

For forecasts of associations, slave matters, servile matters, giving and receiving, or written matters, we will start with ♁.

Then we will proceed as with the single transmissions and receptions: if two or three or more happen to be transmitting and receiving, it is necessary to determine the influence of each star on all those in contact with it. Benefics and malefics will become influential according to the original basis of the nativity. Whatever general configuration <of effects> any given star has when combined with another one which is in aspect or in configuration,

those effects will be caused when the star receives from the other or transmits to the other the chronocratorship.

So that our transmission might be seen more clearly and accurately, we will set down some rules and procedures which we may follow to have an easily understood method.

First it is necessary to note if the transmission is from an angle to an angle, or from <the XI Place of the> Good Daimon to the Lot of Fortune or to an operative place. If so, the forecast will be for success or fame. On the other hand, note if the transmission is from places that precede angles to angles, or from <the XII Place of the> Bad Daimon to <the XI Place of the> Good Daimon. (The operative and effective signs are the Ascendant, MC, <the XI Place of the> Good Daimon, <the V Place of> Good Fortune, the Lot of Fortune, Daimon, Love, Necessity. Signs of moderate activity are <the IX Place of> the God, <the III Place of> the Goddess, and the other two angles. The rest of the signs are mediocre or bad. The influence of a Place is weakened or is strengthened depending on the benefics or malefics which are in conjunction or aspect. <The VI Place of> Bad Fortune, incidentally, seems to be better than <the XII Place of the> Bad Daimon, because of its <Fortune's> position trine with MC.)

OPERATIVE  
PLACES

If one transmission is found in a nativity (i.e. if all stars happen to come to one sign). /**177K**/ they themselves will transmit zodiacally. The nativity will share whatever overall quality this mixture indicates for it with every star.

Say three or four stars are found in one sign, one or two in another: in this case the one in dominant aspect in its degree-position <=to the right> will allot the chronocratorship (i.e. the one with the lowest degree-position of degrees will receive the chronocratorship <first>.) Then the star next in order <will receive>. The same is true for the

receivers <?>. Even though the distribution is complicated, if one pays attention he will not go wrong/**168P**/

The same transmissions are indicated every 12 years. They will, however, not have the same causative influence, but different. Whenever we find a transmission in one cycle, (whether from one or from many), we examine the horoscope recast for that year, particularly the transits of the stars, to see if they have a configuration similar to their configuration at the nativity with respect to the transmitters and receivers, and if they have the same phases with respect to the ☉. If this is found to be true, we say that the results are certain. If the configurations are different and dissimilar, the results will not take place in toto: some things will happen overall, others partially.

For example: if either ♄ or ♃ holds the overall chronocratorship and is favorably situated, and if the same star happens to control the chronocratorship in this current period, the native will inherit or will benefit from legacies.

If ♃ or ♄ rules the year in the second or third cycle, but does not hold the overall chronocratorship, the native will not inherit, but will gain something: he will benefit from legacies or some such expectation, or from the selling of possessions, estates, and other property.

Likewise in the overall chronocratorship: results will be certain at some point of the 12-year cycle, but not later or earlier—unless the stars reveal the meaning of the forecasts.

Examples: someone has married in the first cycle while in his 34th year. (It is necessary to correlate the results with the time of life.) In the second cycle, the native will give thought to love affairs, a second marriage, or whatever turns the mind to women.

Another person campaigned. The same transmission happening again /**178K**/ will lead to success, change, and military matters. If the general basis <of the nativity> happens to be successful, the native will have special success at those times, if benefics are in control. If the nativity is great, the native will be a governor, a procurator, or be one of those in authority. (It is necessary to make the forecasts harmonize with the general tenor of the nativity.)

Another person had children in a certain chronocratorship. When the same transmission happens again (and if his vigor and his time of life permit), the native will have a child or will buy slaves, or he will rear some, treating them as his own children, or he will take thought for another's children.

Another person became a ruler, preeminent among the masses. When the same chronocratorship happens again, and if the basis of the nativity is good, /**169P**/ he will receive great and distinguished offices. If the basis is average, the native will associate with rulers or he will have the appearance of rule or preeminence.

Another person is condemned or imprisoned. When the same transmission happens again and if benefics are in aspect, he will be released from confinement or from the lawsuit. If malefics are in aspect, the native will still be at law because of some criminal attempt or malicious accusation, or he will experience even worse.

And so on—whatever can happen in life will happen according to the transmissions, but in a different way because of the overall chronocratorship, the later recasting of horoscopes, the transits and phases of the stars, and the configurations of each star, which are not generally equivalent. If, for example, stars at a particular time are transiting the star which transmitted, received, or was at an angle in the nativity, these stars will contribute an in-

fluence from their own natures, whether good or bad, and they will either intensify the outcome or hinder it.

We consider results to be certain when the star in transit has the same configuration with the transmitting star as it did at the nativity, or if the transmitting stars and the receiving stars have the same configuration as at the nativity. If the temporal <chronocrators> indicate one thing, but the year and the transits indicate another, the outcomes will be mediocre.

Generally speaking, any star that transmits or receives while setting is ineffective and hindering. If it is found to be a benefic, it provides only the appearance of good.

If the three aphetic points (☉ Ascendant) indicate different outcomes, the year will be complex. Often, if the overall chronocrator informs us that the results will be great and noteworthy, although there is no transmission at one aphetic point, then it is necessary to make the vital sector start there <at the overall chronocrator> and to move on to the yearly chronocrator.

/179K/ Some treatise writers have written mystifyingly about the system just described. Let those, however, who read my treatise remember from the beginning that since no one <else> has worked out any such system before, it was necessary to supply the key by which this transmission method, being very effective, will make forecasts of an astonishing standard for each type of result. If anyone soberly attends to the topics to come in this transmission method, he will continue unshaken <in his craft> through <his use of> the varied theorems of the stars' and signs' influences.

#### 4.12 The Names of the Twelve Places. The Twelve-Fold Division.

/170P/ Let us begin with I the Ascendant, life, steering-oar, body, breath.

II Life, the Gate of Hades, shadowy, giving and receiving, association.

III Brothers, travel abroad, kingship, authority, friends, relatives, rents/revenue, slaves.

IV Rank, children, one's own wife and older individuals, activity, city, home, possessions, lodgings, alterations, change of place, dangers, death, confinement, religious matters.

V The Place of Children, friendship, association, slaves, freedmen, the completion of some good deed or benefaction.

VI Slaves, injuries, hostility, disease, sickness.

VII The Descendant, marriage, success, an affair with a woman, friendship, travel.

VIII Death, benefits from the deceased, the Inactive Place, law, sickness.

IX Friendship, travel, benefits from foreigners, God, king, magnates, astrology, oracles, appearances of the gods, mystic and occult matters, associations.

X Occupation, rank, success, children, women, change, innovation in business.

XI Friends, hopes, gifts, children, slaves, freedmen.

XII Foreign lands, hostility, slaves, injuries, dangers, tribunals, disease, death, sickness.

Each Place acts in the way specified, and the nature of the Place in opposition also acts cooperatively<sup>1</sup>.

---

<sup>1</sup>This was something Morinus was also keen to point out.

When the transmission of the year has been found, we examine the Place where the transmitter is found and the Place where the receiver is found (using the twelve-Place system described above and the properties of the sign and the Place). The transmission of the stars /**180K**/ will have its own causative influence as well, which we will append at the end of <our section> on the distribution.

An example: ♄ or ♂ is in the Ascendant and is either transmitting or receiving. We can say that during this year there will be bodily troubles, danger, or bleeding.

If these stars are in the VII Place from the Ascendant, there will be a turn to the worse because of a wife, or danger to a wife, or an upsetting crisis because of marriage.

If they are in the IX Place from the Ascendant, there will be hazardous travel, trouble abroad, or betrayal at the hands of foreigners.

If they are in the XII Place, there will be grief because of slaves or enemy revolts.

In other words, the star will activate those matters which each Place influences.

/**171P**/ If benefics are in these Places, they indicate something good: rank, profits, longed-for purchases, travel.

Determinations should also be made by taking into consideration the stars receiving from or in aspect with the Places, noting that the type of influence and the outcome of affairs will be determined by the transmitter, the receiver, and their Places. It will also be necessary to look at the ruler<sup>1</sup> of the transmitter or of the receiver and the sign in which it is located, because this star too will be influential on the type of effect <to be expected>.

---

<sup>1</sup>The “dispositor,” another important influence stressed by Morinus.

The II and the VIII Places from the Ascendant will be considered inactive and fatal. Whenever the transmission or reception is in these Places, the native will benefit from aspects relating to death. Greater benefics will accrue when benefics are in conjunction or aspect.

If malefics are in conjunction or aspect, disputatious lawsuits will arise because of a legacy, and the year will be dangerous, calamitous, or impropitious.

Occasionally it happens that when only malefics are <in the Places> or are with the ☉, the ☾, or ☿, the native will be charged with murder or will bring something dangerous on his own head. If in addition ♀ is in conjunction or aspect, the native's life will be even more in upheaval because of poisonings, or he will be denounced as a conspirator.

Note that the places of ♄ are indicative of death and inheritances, and the transmission to ♄ forecasts inherited property and benefits from the deceased. If this transmission coincides with the first chronocratorship, without question there will be inheritances and great benefits proportional to the basis of the nativity.

If the distribution is in the <II Place>, the Gate of Hades, and if the transmission is from ♄ to the house of ♄, there will be an inheritance. If only the transmission occurs, there will be benefits from the deceased—likewise /181K/ if ♄ and ♄ are in the same sign and are transmitting or receiving.

If the transmission is from <the XII Place of the> Good Daimon, <the V Place of> Good Fortune, or from the Lot of Fortune, and if benefics are in aspect, there will be inheritances, gifts, or a cause of some good.

If the fatal Places transmit to Places which precede the angles or vice-versa, the native will hear of someone's death while abroad or as a result of travel. (The four



Places which precede the angles serve as Places of Foreigners and of Slaves.)

Likewise in any nativity **II** and **♄** have the same general effect as the Place of Slaves because of their zodiacal position: when **♅** is in the Ascendant, the Place of Slaves falls in these signs. So even when a native has the Place of Slaves in another sign, /**172P**/ but has malefics in these <**II** [or] **♄**>, he will experience disturbances and injuries from slaves, even penalties, death, and flight, especially if **♄** is in these Places.

If benefics are in these Places, the native will be thought well of <by slaves> and will receive benefits from them, and he himself will be a benefactor of slaves, or will indeed raise some, treating them as his children.

Consider the same to be true for the rest of the Places which precede centers.

### 4.13 The Transmission From an Exaltation to an Exaltation.

A transmission from an exaltation to an exaltation with benefics in conjunction or aspect is productive of rank and profits, especially if the rulers are in their own places. Similarly a transmission from <the star's> own house to its exaltation or vice-versa with the rulers in aspect indicates vigorous, noteworthy results.

A transmission from a depression to a depression indicates a mediocre and variable nativity.

If ♄ and ♂ are properly configured and are transmitting to and receiving from their own houses, exaltations, or operative places, they bring great public services and high rank. ♄ provides inheritances, landed property, estates, rents, stewardships, and it brings success in religious undertakings and affairs of ancient lore. ♂ controls the governing aspect. If benefics are watching and if the ☉ and the ☿ are properly configured with them, they bring great and profitable distinction to men. But if benefics are absent and if the luminaries are in opposition or are unfavorably configured, and if ♄ is involved, /182K/ they bring accusations, reversals, great dangers, plots, riots, and ruin. If the transmission or reception is to or from another star's exaltation, or even to or from its own when it is unfavorably situated, the native will be thrown from high places or from animals, will suffer wounds, bleeding, and dangerous diseases, or be involved in fires and shipwrecks. Even if the nativity is helped and has an allocation of years <left to live>, the native will experience the ruin of his livelihood or rank.

One must observe whether the stars of the night or of the day sect are configured with their sect mates. If they are, they will be more effective for good than the other stars and will be a cause of great good fortune at the times

of their own transmissions and transits. If they are not so configured, /**173P**/ they will prevent any advancement in rank and will hinder any benefits. Because of this they have been named “malefic,” since they are “malefactors” of life, but benefactors in other respects. Even ♀ and ♂, when found to be setting at the time of transmission or transit, when unsuitably configured, or when unfavorably situated, cause a disturbed period, unsuccessful and full of delays; they are “malefactors” of hopeful expectations or benefits. In addition, they even bring penalties, spiritual torment, and criticism for one’s accomplishments.

#### 4.14 The Phases and Transits of the Stars.

For all stars the following general factors must be observed: if they are found to be rising when transmitting or receiving, and to be ruling the year or acting as the overall chronocrator, and if they are rising when they arrive at operative places in their transits, they clearly bring occupation. Their power is aroused then, and each star will cause the results appropriate to its nature. Whatever influence and effects it has at the nativity or whatever the year indicates—in whichever sign it is located, those are the effects it will activate.

If the stars are passed the first stationary point and are found to be retrograde, they delay expectations, actions, profits, and enterprises. In the same way they will be rather weak and thwarting when in opposition to the ☉; they hold out only appearances and hopes. /183K/

If they are at <or passed> the second stationary point, they cancel any delay and reinstate the same activities. They then bring stability and success in life.

If the stars are at their last visibility, they bring obstacles and pains in one's accomplishments, as well as bodily crises, illnesses, and afflictions of the hidden parts. Often they hold out rank and great hopes only to turn them to the worse.

If a malefic forecasts something for a nativity and has the year <=is chronocrator>, and if <another> malefic transits the year, it intensifies the evil; if a benefic transits, it brings relief and help. Assume the same is true for benefics.

In any nativity ♄ has an extraordinary effect. If it transits the year, the points square, or those in opposition, and if the chronocrator is well situated or in operative places, it will bring great public services and high rank, /174P/ particularly so when it is rising; then it

has special power over the stars which seem to control the chronocratorship.

If the chronocrator is unfavorably situated while ♃ is in transit, it will be somewhat weak and unsettled and will delay the public services and high rank. If it is rising, it will relieve or help moderately.

#### 4.15 The III Place and the IX Place from the Ascendant.

The III or the IX Place from the Ascendant, when transmitting or receiving with benefics in those Places, causes travel under favorable circumstances, or occupation and association abroad or with foreigners. If the Place happens to be in a bicorporeal sign, the native will profit or will travel many times. Some men <with a star> in these Places receive messages from God, know the future, and are in charge of sacrifices, prayers, and offerings to God. Others avoid illness, imprisonment, accusation, disease, or danger through the foresight of God, and they bless Him for it.

If the nativity's basis is great and if the overall chronocrator is supportive, the native receives gifts from a king, governing responsibilities, or authority, or—having escaped from troubles and crises with royal good fortune—he becomes renowned. Some prepare shrines, temples, and royal images and in so doing win eternal fame. But if malefics are in conjunction or aspect /184K/ with these Places, the native is spitefully treated abroad and falls into penalties or poverty. He does not succeed abroad, but is involved in wanderings and danger, and comes to his end cursing his fate as if he were suffering the wrath of God.

Some men during these times will deny God's power, will engage in bizarre religious acts or eat unclean food. They will become soothsayers, seers, or prophets, or they will be considered mad. Those endowed with a more lofty fortune or rank will endure disturbances abroad or because of foreigners, as well as scandal, riots, and revolts of mobs or cities, because of which they undergo extraordinary dangers, hostility, and betrayal because of their responsibilities. Sometimes they meet with accusations, are terrorized by the king, and are ruined in rank and

livelihood.

#### 4.16 Nativities of Varying Fortunes.

First of all it is necessary to take into account the basis and rank of each nativity and to coordinate the influence of the stars and signs with this basis, /**175P**/ so that the forecast for average and for exalted nativities will not be different, not the same.

Each star and each sign has an average influence for benefit or harm, as well as an extreme influence for good or bad, and they are sometimes the cause of great good, sometimes of great evil. So, if we find a distinguished and illustrious nativity <whose basis> is guaranteed by an aspect of benefics in the temporal transmission, but the malefics have the chronocratorship or have come in their transits to the angles or operative places, we say that the nativity will suffer nothing unexpected: the native will put his household completely in disorder, will endure scandal and criticism, and will be disturbed and fearful.

If the ☉ or the full moon is afflicted, the native will act unlawfully and violently, will suffer upsets and much-talked-about dangers, as well as revolts of cities and of enemies, because of which he will live assailed by disturbances. For such nativities, /**185K**/ it will be necessary to determine the conjunctions and aspects of the benefics in order to see if the causes might go beyond <what is expected>, and might foretell ruin or disgrace. If only the ☽ or the Ascendant is afflicted, the high rank of the native will not come to fruition because of his bodily afflictions and sudden illnesses, and it will become painful and grievous to the possessor.

If the basis of the nativity is found to be characteristic of one living an inactive, isolated life, varied and surprising activities during the transmission of the chronocratorships or in the configuring of transits should not be forecast. Furthermore, those who are entirely fortunate



will not be harmed by malefics entering operative places, nor will the humble be helped by benefics—all because of the overall predisposition <of the nativity>, which partial influences cannot change.

Now there are many nativities which fall from great fortune and rank to low rank, while others rise from mediocre fortune and base descent to prosperity and prominence. <In view of this,> if the nativity is found to be rising to high position judging from the overall situation<?>, and if benefics have the chronocratorship in the detailed configuration of years, brilliant prospects, benefits, and success will follow. If malefics have the chronocratorship, uncertainties, disturbances, and bodily afflictions will follow, but the underlying <favorable> basis will remain unchanged.

On the other hand, if the nativity falls to low rank (again judging from the overall basis), even if benefics receive the yearly chronocratorship or are in transit, their influence for good will be quite weak and they will permit malefics /176P/ to harm the nativity. So, not in every case do benefics have a benefic role nor malefics a malefic role, but they interchange in the detailed configuration of years according to the overall basis of the nativity, becoming benefics <at one time, malefics at another.

BENEFIC AS  
MALEFIC

MALEFIC AS  
BENEFIC

In addition, it is necessary to examine the activities of each nativity to see if it gets its impulse from ☿, ♂, ♀, or ♄, or from the ☼, the ♃, or ♅, and whether its basis is found to be distinguished. If each star is favorably configured in the transmissions or is coming to a transit, the year will be beneficial and productive of glory in <the star's> type of activity. For example, if ♄ comes into the places of the ☼ or the ♃, the native will be harmed in those matters which the ☼, the ♃, or their places naturally indicate. Likewise if the year is with ♄ /186K/ or

comes to it (i.e. where it was located at birth or where it is at the transit), we will make the forecast according to <♄'s nature>. When the rest of the stars, plus the ☉ and the ♃, are in the Leisurely Place and are chronocrators, they become inactive; when in opposition <to the Leisurely Place>, they cause disturbances.

For any nativity, if the year is transmitted from the ☉, the ♃, and the Ascendant and gives any indications, those indications will be unchangeable, whether good or bad: it is good if the transmission goes to ♀, ♁, or operative places; it is bad if it goes to ♄, ♂, or afflicted places; if the transmission goes to both, the nature of the stars and places will indicate what will happen that year. If the three figures <☉♃ Ascendant> indicate incompatible events, the year will be complicated and subject to ups and downs.

It is better if malefics transmit to benefics rather than the reverse.

A star transmitting to another star in the same sign (i.e. a houseruler in operative places) brings a vigorous period.

The following procedure seems to be scientific: the apheta of the years should start from each indicative Place. We start from MC when investigating occupations, from the Place of Marriage when investigating wives, from the Place of Slaves when investigating slaves, and likewise from the Place of Children. If we find that benefics are in conjunction or aspect with the place we come to, or if the sign is operative, we can say that the outcome will have success, profits, and the fulfillment of wishes<sup>1</sup>.

In any configuration it will be necessary to see in which

---

<sup>1</sup>This sounds like profections but from the house of interest rather than always from the Ascendant

sign the houseruler of the houseruler<sup>1</sup> is located and how it is configured. If the houseruler of the sign is unfavorably situated and indicates some crisis, but its houseruler [*dispositor*] /177P/ is favorably situated, relief from this evil will come, as well as partial benefits or a successful outcome of expectations: the native will receive trusts and gifts from the great or from royal personages, if the overall chronocratorship is controlled by the ☉ and the ☾ or by benefics, and if the distribution is to a good place.

The following is particularly <effective> in a nativity: if ♄ is in superior aspect to ♁, or is in square, trine, opposition, or conjunction; likewise if ♂ is found in trine, square, or in the Place just following the Descendant when ♄ is at IC—under these conditions the gifts to the native will be very great and most profitable.

In the case of those who present gifts to others, who strive for public acclaim, and who spend money on the masses: /187K/ if ♄ is found to be in aspect with ♄ and ♀ at the nativity, but not with ♁ and ♂, the native will be acclaimed and will share much public repute and honor.

If ♄ has ♂ in aspect on the right, the native will regret his actions, will experience criticism, upset, and the notoriety of scandal, even if he spends his money lavishly.

If ♄ has ♁ in aspect <on the right>, the native will end up a starveling, notorious, endangered. If ♄ also has benefics in aspect, both things will happen.

All stellar aspects are powerful, but the aspects of square and opposition are considered especially so.

<Aspects> are considered <strong> in the signs of equal rising times...

---

<sup>1</sup>The dispositor of the planet ruling the sign marking the house.

The transmission passing to  $\text{♄}$  and  $\text{♅}$  from those <signs?> indicates that the results will be insecure, subject to delays and lawsuits, and completely ruinous.

The transmission to  $\text{♆}$  and  $\text{♇}$  brings mysterious and harmful results because these signs are imperfect.

If the distribution is to be scientifically based, it will be necessary not only to examine the transmissions in the natal chart, but also in charts for katarchai and for run-aways. Determine the Ascendant, make the chart, then use it in the same way as for nativities.

If  $\text{♁}$  and  $\text{♂}$  have a relationship with the  $\text{☉}$  and the  $\text{☿}$  or with the Ascendant (e.g. opposition, superior aspect, or any other influence for bad)...

Assume, for instance, the nativity of a child is presented for interpretation, a child to whom a forecast for the beginning of an occupation cannot apply. When the transmissions of the stars are found, the results will apply to the father and mother, occasionally to his master, until the time when the native, attaining the age of full development, is subject to the indications <of the forecast>.

Forecast for a child only what can apply to him: gifts, legacies, adoption, dislocations, boils, etc. Sometimes surprising /178P/ forecasts are made for such people, forecasts which become evident from the overall interpretation of the stars.

It is also necessary to harmonize forecasts for each indicated period with the age of the native and the customs and laws of the country. If this is done, the operation will be considered irrefutable.

In horoscopes for paired nativities—brothers, man and wife, relatives, other persons linked by friendship—it is necessary to make the forecast for the individual whom the horoscope best fits /188K/ at the applicable time,

and to say that such and such will happen first or second to this individual; then assign the outcome to the other individual in the second place. For example: if the horoscope causes A to benefit from something to do with a death, and causes B to benefit at some time from an inheritance, an inheritance from which A also expects to gain, the gain will not come in the chronocratorship of A, but in the chronocratorship of B, who is expecting the inheritance. (The forecast will be made from MC.) The same forecast will be realized more quickly for one person, but more slowly for the other, because of travel, a trial, accusation, or some other crisis. The same applies to rank, gifts, buying and selling, association and affinities, travel, and to all other occurrences in life. Therefore events sometimes come to pass sooner or later than expected because of the sympathies and antipathies of nativities.

Nature reveals her causative forces through the cycles of the stars just as if she had supplied us with a map, but she brings some things suddenly and unexpectedly, while delaying others and holding them under the power of Necessity, until the star which is the most fitting cause of the matter receives the chronocratorship.

It is necessary to make a comparison between the universal motions and these matters: the ☉ moving through the tropic degrees does not always effect the same change of weather, but sometimes it brings the universal fabric to a mild condition before it is expected, and sometimes it passes through the winter tropic with clear weather, but later stirs up heavy squalls and fearsome gusts of wind.

Nor does the ☾ <always> cause storms corresponding to its visible phases, nor does it <clear> the air after conjunction, but sometimes it storms and shows the effects of its nature before they are expected, and it causes an extraordinary mixture of weather, at other times it par-

tially manifests wintery conditions, /**179P**/ but then in that very phase, it brings a clear sky. Occasionally, when passing out of conjunction, it takes a wintery turn.

In a similar fashion the other weather indications and settings of the stars will not <always> have the same results: they will show their phases sometimes early, sometimes late, sometimes not in full measure.

These variations will occur according to the /**189K**/ risings of the year, the new and full moons, the eclipses and the quadrennia, the overall and the cyclical house-rulers, and with reference to the interchange of periodic transits.

#### 4.17 The Transmissions of the Stars and the Ascendant. The Results.

Continuing this topic, we must append the transmissions of the stars.

##### [The Distributions of the Sun]

The ☉ transmitting to ♁ brings a bad year. It indicates unemployment, setbacks, hostility and rejection, damage from superiors or elders, rebellions of the lower classes, diseases and eye infirmities, ups and downs of livelihood and terrifying upheavals, attacks of subject peoples, the deaths of fathers or of men in the place of fathers. If the transmission is unfavorably situated, it brings convictions and imprisonment.

The ☉ transmitting the year to ♋ indicates a brilliant year: the father's high rank (for those who have a living father), association with superiors, prosperity, gifts, prominent occupations, offices. It brings the begetting of children and marriage (for the unmarried) and brings enterprises to fruition. It brings success and foretells great expectations.

The ☉ transmitting to ♂ indicates a sickly and hazardous year: danger to the father or to those in the role of a father,... For him an effective period<?> and success in business, but with many quarrels, expenses, inopportune penalties, hostility from the great or from fathers, harm from subordinates, cuts, bleeding, loss of blood, troubles of the intellectual faculties, blindness, crises due to hatred, abuse.

The ☉ transmitting to ♀ indicates a good, affectionate period: it brings associations and friendships, gifts, enjoyment, affections, marriages, /180P/ childbirths, buying of jewels or slaves. To men of superior rank it brings of-

fices, distinguished rank, a vision of great expectations, and freedom from trouble and every crisis.

The ☉ transmitting to ☿ is good, effective, advantageous, associative, beneficent to subordinates, and productive of giving and receiving. If it is beheld by malefics, it brings trials and tribulations, anxiety because of money or documents, the condemnation of slaves and friends, as well as untimely expenses and penalties.

The ☉ transmitting to the ♃ is vigorous and kindly: /190K/ it brings acquisition, benefits from males and females, associations, marriages, unions, distinguished births, prosperity and gifts from foreigners or from abroad.

The ☉ distributing to itself and being favorably configured brings brilliant prospects and activities: associations with and unexpected benefits from superiors and the great.

If the ☉ is in conjunction or in aspect with benefics, it brings even greater rank and benefits.

If however the birth is at night, the forecast will be less optimistic: disturbed, with hostility, crises, or envious accusations.

If a malefic is in conjunction or aspect, it brings reduction of livelihood, ruin of status, hazardous travel, the hostility of or danger to the father, and the disruption of activities.

First of all it is necessary to examine the nature and relationships of the stars: each star in its own sect and favorably configured will show a causative influence depending on the basis of the nativity.

The aspects and transits of the other stars will have great power to weaken or postpone a bad influence or to benefit and elevate <the native>. It is better if they



are found rising and in operative signs; if they are in the Descendant, or are inappropriately or badly situated and afflicted, they will turn to the worse.

### 4.18 The Distributions of the Moon.

The ☾ distributing to itself is unpleasant: it brings hostility and lawsuits from the great, ups and downs of livelihood, and confrontations with relatives or wives. A malefic in aspect from the right brings bodily weakness /181P/ and sudden dangers. In such a chronocratorship, it is necessary to examine the sign in which the ☾ is located, in order to see if a malefic in transit will cause something worse.

If a benefic is in transit, it brings relief from the crisis, but it also brings travel and change of place. At the same time it brings renewed success for the indigent and a cure for their miseries.

The ☾ distributing to the ☉ brings the waning of livelihood and great expenses. Especially if malefics behold the transmission, the failure of actions and vain hopes are foretold, as well as upheavals, disturbances, domestic disorders, and affairs or marriage with women. For those who have a solidly established rank in life, <this distribution brings> expenditures resulting in purchases or renewed success in business, /191K/ and advancement or some gifts and benefactions.

The ☾ distributing to ♀ brings a complicated and fluctuating year: the sickness or death of the mother (if she is still alive), hostility, disarray in business, changes of place, chilling of activities, bodily dangers, troubles of the hidden parts or of the sensory faculties—especially if the ☾ is waning. If it is waxing, the damage will be less, except that the period will be harmful and grievous.

The ☾ distributing to ♀ indicates a good and productive period, one full of accomplishment and association with the great, rank and offices, benefits and gifts from females. It brings marriage to the unmarried, children to the married, alliances and friendships, or the increase of

the mother's livelihood and rank (for those who have a mother living), success in business, and the fulfillment of hopes and expectations.

The ☽ transmitting to ♂ brings a hard year, especially if the ☽ is waxing (for day births): it causes dangers and illness, bleeding, falls, accidents with fire, penalties, domestic disorder, the deaths of or separations from females, hostility, trials, imprisonment, and upheavals of the masses.

If the moon is waning or is approaching new (especially for night births), and since the chronocratorship is passing to the troublesome and active <star>, it forecasts that men will succeed—but only with anxiety and labor.

The ☽ distributing to ♀ indicates a period which brings success and accomplishment: rank, association, alliances with men and women, and marriage. If the stars are inappropriately situated and are beheld by malefics, /182P/ they bring about unpleasantness, hatred, expenses, and breaches of promise towards female individuals. Overall, this transmission generally brings jealousy, quarrels, disorders, and hostility towards relatives, family, and friends.

The ☽ distributing to ♀ brings an effective and successful period with respect to females and political associations, especially if <the transmission> is configured with benefics; if with malefics, men will endure lawsuits and disturbances because of money, documents, and accounts, and they will suffer great struggles. If ♀ is found situated in its rightful place, they will survive; if not, they will be condemned and will make great expenditures.

### 4.19 Distributions of the Ascendant

/192K/ The Ascendant transmitting to a malefic brings a very bad period, especially if the transmission is to ♁ (for night births) or to ♂ (for day births). It brings bodily dangers, ups and downs of livelihood, anxiety, disturbing crises, falls, and injuries.

The Ascendant transmitting to ♃ indicates a brilliant and profitable period, high ranks, and distinguished positions. Some are helped and promoted by the great; some escape dangers and crises and their troubles are relieved; others attain freedom.

The Ascendant transmitting to ♀ indicates a good, lovely time: associations and affairs with women, buying, good cheer, an escape from evils.

The Ascendant transmitting to the ☉ indicates that men will be well received by the great and by superiors, and that the year will be successful. For those of high rank, it brings even higher positions and advancement.

The Ascendant transmitting to the ♃ indicates a steady and effective period: help from and associations with women, innovations, occupations, travel with a successful outcome, and (especially if benefics are in aspect) prosperity abroad. If malefics are in aspect, it indicates the opposite—and with disturbances.

The Ascendant transmitting to ♄ indicates an effective, profitable, and successful period. If the transmission is harmed by malefics, the period will be subject to the law and to penalties.

Stars transmitting to the Ascendant show the same results; a forecast will be made of good or bad according to the position of each star, whether appropriate or the opposite.

## 4.20 The Distributions of Saturn

/183P/ ♄ distributing to itself points to trouble and unemployment, hostility from elders or the great, and disgrace. Men will fail in their attempts or, if they do accomplish anything, it will be insecure. If ♀ or ♂ beholds ♄, men will be denounced and have trials because of documents; they will suffer the subversion of matters concerning religion or legacies, will suffer from malignity and tricks, and they will come to an end like those suffering the wrath of God. <If benefics are in aspect,> the results will be milder: <troubles> will come more slowly, mixed with some success.

♄ transmitting to the ☉ brings danger to the father or his death, if he already has some infirmity. It brings an uncertain year: /193K/ hostility, penalties, lawsuits, troubles of the sense organs, recurrence of disease, meanness on the part of friends and relatives. For day births, if the transmission happens to be favorably configured, men will succeed with wearisome labor and expenditures, or they will profit from deaths.

♄ distributing to the ♀ indicates danger to the mother—if she is still alive; if not, to female individuals. It <brings about> hostilities, separations, damage, criminality, disturbances in business, dangerous movements, bodily weakness, intermittent fevers, internal and nervous disorders, feebleness, dimming of vision, unexpected diseases.

♄ distributing to ♂ indicates a terrible and dangerous year: it brings about illnesses, plots, troubles, dangers, the deaths of family members and suffering or disturbances and lawsuits on behalf of family members, the ingratitude of friends, family upheavals, defense speeches/disputes, fears and hatreds with respect to the great, the deaths of fathers (if they are still alive) or of

older individuals, hazardous and profitless travel. If the stars are unfavorably situated, they bring about shipwreck and ruin, diseases and injuries. If they are well configured in operative signs or have benefics in aspect, most of the trouble will be dissipated.

♄ distributing to ♋ indicates a fine and effective period: men receive inheritances and legacies. They receive help from older people or from wills. They control estates and property. Some gain profit from moist matters: they own ships, they purchase ships, they demolish and /184P/ rebuild, they restore old matters and are adorned with a livelihood. If ♂ or ♀ are together and in aspect with this distribution, men will endure trials and lawsuits, and will have untimely expenses.

♄ distributing to ♎ indicates those who separate from wives or are wronged by females. Some will see the deaths <of wives> or will be inconstant in their marriages and love affairs. Some will be the victims of plots and will experience poisoning. They suffer internal troubles, are plagued by weakness, chills, attacks of the flux, and endure reversals, lawsuits, and changes in their affairs. If the nativity is of a women, she will live in pain, especially if she is pregnant. /194K/ She will also have affairs with her husband's friends.

♄ distributing to ♏ indicates disputes about old or religious matters, about money or accounts, about giving and receiving. It indicates obstacles to accomplishing anything, penalties, betrayals, and hatred. Men will see the deaths of family members, will become accomplices or meddling persons during these periods, will be involved in loans and debts, will suffer upheavals because of documents, all according to the proper or improper configuration of these stars in the horoscope. They are most terrible and ruinous when in square or opposition <with each other>; they then bring anxiety and upset

instigated by the dead/legacies.

## 4.21 The Distributions of Jupiter

♃ distributing to itself brings a good and effective period: help from friends, gifts, successful activities, trusts, stewardships, associations with the great, and the begetting of children. If it is beheld by ♂, it brings ups and downs and untimely expenses.

♃ distributing to the ☉ indicates a brilliant period, full of accomplishment for superior personages: it brings popular success, offices, advancement. It makes men worth of honors, garlands, the offices of governor and general, and indicates the attainment of wealth—all proportional to the <stars'> arrangements and positions in the horoscope. For men of average rank, it indicates employment, escape from evils, freedom, beneficial associations, changes, as well as sympathetic friendships, childbirths, the acquisition of slaves—all this especially when ♃ is well configured for day births. /185P/

♃ distributing to ♁ makes movements that can produce good or bad, expenses, domestic distrust. To some it brings deaths, changes of residence or business, unsteady associations, hostility of friends. It makes men fail to succeed in enterprises or to succeed only after delay. It makes men petition and plead <for justice> and to be involved in troubles.

♃ distributing to ♂ indicates a harmful and disturbing year: it controls hostility from superiors, slanders, condemnations, betrayals, hazardous travel, dangerous diseases, critical periods or deaths of family members, ups and downs in livelihood, expenses. If the nativity is found to be of the public or governing class, and if the configuration is favorable, it brings political ties and advancement, along with expenses, gifts, and promises. These men will live with anxiety and suspicion. /195K/



𐤃 distributing to ♀ is profitable and full of gain: it brings affectionate associations, gifts, help from or because of women. Men are involved in intimacy, love affairs, and friendships. It brings marriage to the unmarried and conception or childbirth to the married. To noble nativities, it brings the honor of wearing garlands, distinguished rank, state offices, gifts to the masses, great advancement and preeminence, the possession of slaves and ornaments.

𐤃 distributing to ☿ is effective and profitable: it develops business and becomes helpful to those concerned with words, accounts, or documents. It brings friendship with the great, gifts or conveyances, and profits from deposits or treasure troves. As a result men purchase slaves and become elegant. Some advance in rank, especially if the stars are favorably situated. As a rule, however, the native is slandered among the masses and is disturbed, or he endures scandal. Especially if the stars are badly configured or have malefics in opposition, conjunction, or square, the native suffers extraordinary trials and lives in anxiety.

𐤃 distributing to the ♃ indicates a successful period full of accomplishment: ties with and help from women and the great, rank, offices, preeminence, escape from dangers, the acquisition of ornaments or slaves, conception or childbirth, affairs with women, gifts, conveyances, and benefits for the mother (if she is still alive). If the configuration is favorable, /186P/ men will control deposits. It causes men to find treasures and to become wealthy, to bless God, and to escape harm or slavery.

## 4.22 The Distributions of Mars

For day births, ♂ distributing to itself will be unpleasant and disturbing: it brings hostility, harm, abuse connected with public business, or expenses for the public. So, some are abused or imprisoned by officials or by the wealthy. For night births ♂ is not bad: it promotes success and becomes helpful, especially if it is in operative signs, particularly for those who participate in martial affairs or in public or official life.

♂ transmitting to the ☉ indicates danger to the father—if he is alive; /196K/ if not, danger to the one who is like a father. It causes hostility from the great, separations from friends, dangerous diseases, troubles of the sense organs, danger from fires, heights, or animals, bleeding, amputations, and falls. It brings envy, disputes, and risky travels. If <the stars> happen to be in operative signs or have benefics in aspect, they bring employment, benefits, rank, political ties with superiors, but at the same time they bring anxiety, upset, plots, hatred and obstacles in the employment.

♂ distributing to the ♃ is hazardous, prone to fail: it causes disorders, confinements, lawsuits, anxieties, hazardous travel, attacks and abuse from foreigners, danger to the mother or to females, battles, separations. It disturbs the masses or the city. It brings weakness, bleeding, falls, relapses of diseases, danger from fire, and shipwreck. Especially if the nativity is during the day, and if the moon is waxing and unfavorably situated, the previously described effects will become worse: even blindness, wounds, the breaking of bones, troubles and injuries to the eyes. If the stars happen to have benefics in aspect and are in operative places, they cause risky activities and advancement. To females they bring bodily dangers, bleeding and consumption, abortion, and troubles of the generative organs. /187P/

♂ distributing to ♀ indicates a terrible and disturbed year: men come into lawsuits and abuse, penalties and breaches of faith; they see dangers to or the deaths and destruction of family members; they are involved in violent disruptive deeds, in harmful or painful travel, in bandit attacks, in illnesses and sudden dangers, revolts of their enemies, injury or grief from slaves. After meeting with imprisonment, anxiety, and the need for defense speeches, they will be treated miserably—unless the stars bring about these crises just to a minor degree, because they are in their proper signs or have benefics in aspect.

♂ distributing to ♀ indicates a fine and effective year: it brings success, help from and association with the great, good hopes and the fulfillment of wishes. If the native has some connection with the military, he will campaign and be successful. Those of lofty fortune will be distinguished in their governorships and high rank;/197K/ they will change their position for the better and will be adorned with the prerogatives appropriate to them, even though they had been involved in ups and downs and expenses previously. If the star is in opposition, it is indicative of reversals and penalties.

♂ distributing to ♀ indicates hostility with and separation from females, family upheavals, the death of the mother (if she is still alive), or of females, intimacy and whoring, impermanent friendships, and denunciation. Even if the stars have an affinity, men suffer chills <=inactivity> and will be confounded in their <business> affairs. Women live endangered by bleeding and miscarriage.

♂ transmitting to ♀ indicates a disturbed year: it controls dangers, penalties, and disputes because of documents, money, or accounts, crime by magic, loans, debts, legal attacks and defenses. If the stars are in bicorporeal signs, men will display this same behavior towards others

and will commit any crime. If the three aphetic points <☉ Ascendant> are preserved, men will survive these effects. If, however, they are badly situated, men will be unsteady in their accomplishments. If they get into law-suits, they will be worsted, will suffer very great losses, and will be involved in extraordinary crises.

### 4.23 The Distributions of Venus

♀ distributing to itself when favorably situated brings friendships and associations, agreements between men and women, gifts, enjoyable intimacies, marriage, family harmony, pleasures, and profits. If the star is found with ♄ or ♂, is beheld by them, or is in inoperative signs, it brings criticism, denunciation, whoring, penalties, breaches of faith, treachery from women, trials, and disorder. Women suffer the same treatment from men.

♀ distributing to the ☉ brings a glorious period, full of accomplishment, a period characterized by associations and help from males and females: intimacy, marriage, childbirths, the purchase of ornaments and slaves, or gifts of these same items, high rank for the father (if he is still alive), or sympathy and help from father-like figures—all of this especially if the stars are favorably configured. To those of superior rank it brings the honor of wearing garlands, high-priesthoods, advancement, offices, /198K/ and gifts to the masses. It brings oracles, association in religious or divine matters, charm, and joy.

♀ distributing to the ♃, when <♀> is favorably located and configured in auspicious places, indicates a profitable period, full of gain: it decorates men with spectacular livelihoods and bestows on them distinguished ranks—except that <this rank comes> accompanied by envy, jealousy, quarrels, and secret hatred from some men. It usually brings incomplete or partial acquisition and benefits. If ♀ is unfavorably configured, it causes injustice and hatred from males and females, and uncertainty and disorder in regard to relatives and friends. Overall, the transmission from ♀ to the ♃ is basically envious and jealous.

♀ distributing to ♄ indicates an uncertain and damaging period: it brings separations from women, fights,

violence, denunciation, injustices even from the mother or from females, the hostility of relatives, disgrace, disputes with older people or associates. It entangles men in gossip and shameful passions, unstable friendships and intimacies. Men are at law with women and endure confrontations. They experience <changes> of place and a chilling of business. They fall into weakness and troubles of the hidden parts or of the sense organs. /189P/ They are threatened with plots, poison, and recurrent fevers, especially if ♂ and ♀ are in aspect.

♀ distributing to ♀ indicates a good year, full of gain: it brings association with the great, gifts, offices, civic and social magnificence, rank and advancement, marriage and contacts with females, friendships, conception and childbirth, and graciousness in all activities. Even if a man is of mediocre fortune, he will succeed and will gain release from his miseries or from subjugation; he will be thought worthy of trust and honor and will be adorned with the prerogatives appropriate to him.

♀ distributing to ♂ indicates an uncertain year: fights and separations from women, bleeding, consumption, the deaths of women or mothers. Men plead cases because of women, and they endure jealousy, hostility, denunciation, gossip, and whoring. They are wronged, are betrayed, and when acting against their real intentions or in pretense, they suffer punishment. Occasionally they think that the breakup /199K/ of their marriage is what they have prayed for, and they go through with it because of some anticipated good; <but they suffer> scandal in the mouths of everyone.

♀ distributing to ♀ indicates an effective period, full of attainment in the areas of giving, receiving, and trade. For those active in letters or education, it makes friendships, the purchase of ornaments and slaves, alliances and agreements with males and females, ranks and honors,

success in business, association in religious matters, trusts consisting of deposits, and the harmony of relatives.

## 4.24 The Distributions of Mercury

☿ distributing to itself is effective and helpful in enterprises and trusts: it causes men who achieve their goals, who are superior to their enemies, who operate as actors or religious figures, who are successful in business, and who gain prosperity from words or accounts. Especially if ☿ is rising, is in operative signs, or is beheld by ♃ and ♀, it indicates greater trusts and profits. If it is beheld by malefics, it is indicative of anxieties and reversals.

☿ transmitting the year to the ☉ is associative, effective, and full of accomplishment: it brings association with the great, requests, gifts (but with delays and obstacles), stewardships, preeminence, and knowledge of religious /190P/ matters. It is glorious and beneficial to those involved in letters and education. For the most part, men gain advantage through religion or acting.

☿ distributing to the ♃ indicates an effective year, especially if the ♃ happens to be rising and favorably configured and if <both are> in operative places: it brings associations with males and females, profits in business, successes, trusts, achievement of goals, and an understanding with the great. If ☿ is inappropriately situated and is beheld by malefics, it brings trials, expenses, abuse, threats from the great, imprisonment, anxieties, and the <unholy> revealing of mysteries.

☿ distributing to ♃ indicates a disturbed and dangerous year: it brings the ruin of business, abuse, penalties and trials because of religion, documents, or debts. Men become enfeebled, consumptive, or diseased; they are burdened with bile or attacked with poison. /200K/ They see the deaths of family members, brothers, or children, and go to court or have disputes about legacies. If these stars are in opposition or square, or are unfavorably situated and beheld by ♂, men contrive something



dangerous for themselves; they are involved in shipwrecks or typhoons and live miserably. If the stars are suitably configured, they bring rank and success in business—after expenses and delays. If the stars are turned away, they have a moderately crisis-producing effect.

☿ distributing to ♋ is effective and successful: it brings political ties and friendships, success in business, stewardships and the office of prophet, prosperity in letters or accounts. In general, however, men will have bad reputations among the masses, will suffer scandal and anxieties, will be involved in untimely expenditures, will be disordered in regard to family, friends, or relatives, and will suffer struggles for their own health—if not their own, then for others’.

☿ distributing to ♂ is not good: it brings hostility and trials, penalties and crime, forgery, loans, debts, attacks and plunderings, disorder and betrayal, family upheavals. Occasionally men will inflict all this on others: they become bold and active in their assaults; they make their attempts in all directions and contrive assaults; they live in anxiety and upheaval, suspecting crises and anticipating ruin. /191P/ ☿ distributing to ♀ indicates a good and effective period, lovely with respect to giving and receiving, purchasing and exchanging. It is helpful to those involved in letters, education, or stewardship. Men acquire ties, new friendships and intimacies, and are involved in affairs with males and females. To those standing in high fortune it brings the acquisition of slaves and ornaments, and it makes men successful in their requests, friendships, and advancement, and it makes them beneficent to their own people.

## 4.25 The Distributions of the Four Lots

The Lot of Fortune transmitting or receiving in operative places, with benefics in conjunction or aspect, indicates good fortune, advancement, employment, rank, /**201K**/ success in business, fulfillment of expectations, and profits from legacies. When it precedes an angle or has malefics in aspect, it provides lower employments or ranks; whatever men accomplish will be impermanent and accompanied by reversals and dangers, trials and abuse.

FORTUNE

Daimon transmitting or receiving in operative signs, with benefics in aspect brings opportunities which accord with one's wishes, discerning and easily accomplished plans, helpful advice/contributions from friends, ties with the great, gifts, and rank. It makes men who succeed in their attempts and who are inflated with much self-esteem. If Daimon is unfavorably situated with malefics in aspect it brings changeable fortunes and emotional anguish, insensibility, cross-purposes. It makes men consider their own mistakes as successes, and makes them lay the blame on others, missing the mark in most respects. As a result such men lose heart; they sometimes contrive danger for themselves, are treated like the insane, and are struck mad.

DAIMON

<The Lot of> Love transmitting or receiving in operative signs, with benefics in conjunction or aspect, brings about moral desires and makes men lovers of the good: some turn to education and physical or artistic training; they are softened by their delight in their hopes and they do not consider their forethought/goal a matter of difficulty<?>. Others are enchanted by love /**192P**/ and intimacy with men and women, and they consider <this life> to be good. ♂ and ♀ in aspect or in conjunction with this place (especially if they are in their own signs) make homosexuals, men criticized <for affairs> with both sexes, or those who are fond of weapons, hunting, or

LOVE

wrestling. ♀ <in aspect or conjunction brings> intimacy with women; men when loved will sometimes love in return.

In the same way each star, when allotted this place <Love>, when in aspect, or when receiving the chronocratorship, will bring about the type of desire appropriate to its nature. In general, if malefics are in conjunction or aspect, desires will result in torment, penalties, and danger. Specifically, if ♄ is in conjunction or aspect with ♀ and the ♃, men will have shameful and unnatural loves, will be criticized for affairs with men and women, /202K/ will suffer under scandal, or (even though repenting) will return to their old practices, overcome by passion. If ♄ is also in aspect, what happens will be respectable, powerful, or religious. But if ♂ and ♀ are in conjunction or aspect, or are receiving the chronocratorship, men will love wicked, criminal deeds: they become forgers, robbers, burglars, gamblers, and have a savage character. If ♀ is also in aspect, they become poisoners, lechers, suicides, and so (according to the applicable chronocrator) they are entangled in loans, debts, and villainy, experience imprisonment and trials, and live in danger. This place is strong in many respects, and so pay much attention to it<sup>1</sup>. <The Lot of> Necessity transmitting or receiving in operative signs, with benefics in conjunction or aspect, brings family ties, associations with the great, and the downfall or deaths of enemies. If malefics are in conjunction, it brings lawsuits, judgments, and expenses. As a result men fail in their goals and live miserably. If the configuration is afflicted, men are condemned or ruined<sup>2</sup>.

NECESSITY

<sup>1</sup>Riley: The Lot of Love (for day births) is found by determining the distance from the Lot of Fortune to the Lot of Daimon, then counting that distance from the Ascendant; for night births, the reverse - marginal note.

<sup>2</sup>Riley: To find it: take the distance from Daimon to Fortune; for night births, the reverse - marginal note.

These result have been determined for the nativities and chronocratorships of men; they will also apply to nativities of women when the configurations of the transmissions are appropriate and the results described can happen <to women>. /**193K**/

4.26 The One-fourth [Method] for the  
Distribution of the Chronocratorships  
According to the Spheres  
Upwards—According to Critodemus

Planet	Years
♃	1
♄	2
♅	3
♆	4
♇	5
♈	6
♉	7

The total is 28 years.

The degree-assignment <monomoiria> is done as follows: whatever <star> rules the sign in which the ♃ is located, that <star> is taken as the first chronocrator, then the rest in the order of their spheres.

For example: the ♃ in ♌ 6°. ♅ is taken first as the ruler <in ♌>, ♄ second, the ♃ third, ♉ fourth, ♈ fifth, ♇ sixth. Therefore <♌ 6°> is assigned to ♇<sup>1</sup>. 2 Now ♇ is taken first /203K/ as the ruler of the degree-assignment of the ♃ for 5 years, then the stars coming after ♇ at the nativity are taken in order. After the 28 years are completed, begin again with the star coming after ♇.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>[i.e. ♅, the ruler of Libra, in the 6th degree is in the monomoiria of ♇ so we start the distribution from him.]

<sup>2</sup>Riley: Assign the 10 years 9 months counting from the ♆ for day births, from the ♃ for night births. For day births, if the ♆ is unfavorably situated, start from the ♃; for night births start from the ♆. If the ♆ and the ♃ are both “not dominant,” start from the houseruler or any other favorably situated star - marginal note.

#### 4.27 Another Method for Years, from Seuthos. The School of Hermeios, Which Starts from the Sun, the Moon, the Ascendant, or the Lot of Fortune

“These are the four Places from which the beginning of the year <=chronocrator> is made: the ☉, the ☾, the Ascendant, or the Lot of Fortune. The choice is made as follows: if the ☉ is at an angle, it is necessary to count from it; for night births count from the ☾, if it is at an angle to the degree. If these are inapplicable, count from the Ascendant. If the Lot of Fortune is at an angle, providing the luminaries are inapplicable, make it the beginning of the year.

For nativities which have the luminaries approaching the angles, it would be odd to start from <a point> out of its own sect<?>. “Using our system you will most definitely recognize in which signs the year of the nativity will be operative as it proceeds chronologically. For day births <start counting> from the ☉, if it happens to be in the Ascendant or at MC; if not, count from the sign in the Ascendant. Then count the year starting with the ruler (at the nativity) of the place where the count stopped.

For night births, start counting from the ☾, if it is situated as was described for the ☉, particularly if it is rising and increasing in longitude <=waxing>. For the two luminaries if it is not full and if it is decreasing /194P/ in longitude <=waning>, <count> from the node, if it is at an angle alone. If it is not as described, count from the ruler of the place where you stopped, i.e. when you counted from the Ascendant.

If you find the signs at the angles, acting favorably or effectively due to the stars which are in conjunction or which are beholding in the natal chart and in transit, it is clear /204K/ that the year’s results will be good. If the

places are bad, the opposite will result, since the beholding and rising stars provide the active <=beneficial> impulse, while the setting stars provide unemployment and the ruin of what has been done—unless matters happen to be obscure/the chart holds something hidden.

## 4.28 The Position of the Month

“You will get the month as follows: <for day births> determine the distance from the ☉ at the moment in question to the ☉ at the nativity, then count that distance from the sign which has been allotted the year.

For night births, determine the distance from the ☾ at the moment in question to the ☾ at the nativity, then count <that distance> from the sign which has been allotted the year.

Observe the sign in which the new moon occurred, if the nativity was at the new moon; in the same way observe the sign in which the full moon occurred if the nativity was at the full moon. The months will be operative in these signs and will have this point as the beginning: however many days the ☾ at the nativity was from the new- or full-moon position, that same amount will indicate the beginning of the month. If the ☾, for example, was 3 or 5 days from new or full, the beginning of the month will be at that point.



## 4.29 The Calculation of the Days

“You will find the days as follows: multiply the completed full years from the nativity by  $5 \frac{1}{4}$ . Then add to the result of this multiplication the days from the birth date to the day you are investigating. If the date is in the Alexandrian calendar, add the intercalary days (i.e. one-fourth of the total years). Then divide this sum by 12. Count the remainder from the sign which has been given control of the month, /**195P**/ giving one to each sign. Examine the ruler of the sign where the count stops, and forecast the quality of the day from the stars which behold it.

“Find the hours as follows: count from the sign which has been given control of the day, giving two to each sign, from the hour of birth. /**205K**/ Then you will know the good and propitious hours.

This method is excellent for the initiation and beginning of any activity. More particularly, you will accurately know the sickly and relapsing <hours> from the Ascendant’s relationship to the luminaries and to the other angles of the stars.

“Whatever is necessary for a ready calculation has been declared above; whatever one gains from this brief disclosure, he will make a great contribution to his own welfare, if he has a soul of genius and if he introduces into his inner being the reasoning that man’s mind can attain.

“... If you make the progression <=transmission>, use the hourly <factors> 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, or if <you use> the year starting with the ☉ or the month (and this is found by determining the distance from the ☉ at the time in question to the ☽ at the nativity, then counting the same distance from the Ascendant of the year), or as I, Hermes, have prescribed. It is necessary to make the progression<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Riley: =vital sector - marginal note

from all the stars to all the other stars according to the rising times of the signs in each klima.

For example: for a wife, daughters, or female individuals, calculate from ♀; when forecasting concerning actions or related matters, calculate from ☿; when forecasting about dangers, death, sickness, or bleeding, calculate from the malefics in aspect with the Ascendant, the ☼, or the ☿. Similarly for the other matters.

It is also necessary to note the terms in which the progressions are located, which stars are casting rays, and which stars are transiting the sign of the progression. Likewise note how the transmitter and the receiver relate to the nativity, how they rose, and how they were at the nativity.

“Another method for the year <=chronocrator>. You will get the years as follows: from the ☼, which reveals mental matters; from the ☿, which indicates physical matters and matters about the mother; from the Lot of Fortune.

It is necessary to inspect how these relate to each other. If they are benefic and appear harmonious, they indicate a good year; if they are malefic, the opposite.

If they are both benefic and malefic, they forecast that the year too will be varied. The so-called Dog-Star year must be used.” /196P/

4.30 Propitious and Impropitious

Chronocratorships with Reference to the

One-Fourth-Part of the Cycle

The distributions of propitious chronocratorships with reference to the fourths:

Star	Period in Years	One-Fourth of Period
♄	30	7 1/2
♅	12	3 /206K/
♂	15	3 years 9 months
☉	19	4 years 9 months
♀	8	2
♁	20	5
♂	25	6 years 3 months

Those were the minimum periods; following are the maximum:

☉	120
♂	108
♄	57
♅	79
♂	66
♀	82
♁	76

<Saturn's> days are as follows:

♄	637
♅	255
♂	318
☉	403
♀	169 18 hours
♁	423 days 18 hours
♂	531

Jupiter from its 3 years distributes the days:

Itself	102
♂	127 days 12 hours
☉	161 days 6 hours
♀	67 days 12 hours
♁	170 days 12 hours
♂	212 days 6 hours
♄	255

Mars from its 3 years 9 months distributes the days:

Itself	159 days 5 hours
♄	318
♅	127 1/2
☉	201 days 19 hours
♀	84 days 18 hours
♁	212 days 21 hours
♂	265 2/3

The Sun from its 4 years 9 months distributes the days:

♄	403
♅	161 days 12 hours
♆	201 days 20 hours
♇	255 days 18 hours
♈	107 days 21 hours
♉	269 days 4 hours
♊	336 days 6 hours

Venus - 2 years:

♄	170
♅	68
♆	85
♇	107 days 12 hours
Itself	45
♈	113 days 12 hours
♉	141 days 12 hours

Mercury - 5 years:

♄	425
♅	170
♆	212
♇	269
♈	113
Itself	283 days 12 hours
♊	354

The Moon from its 6 years 3 months <distributes>:

♄	531
♅	212
♂	265 days 15 hours
☉	336
♀	141 days 16 hours
♂	354 days
♄	442

Wherever the year stops, the ruler of the sign gives its period first:

♄	85 days
☉	53 days 20 hours
♂	56 days 16 hours
♀	22 days 16 hours
♅	34 days
♄	70 days 20 hours
♂	42 days 12 hours

Another method: the number of terms which a given star has in the 12 signs will be the number of years of that star. For example: the Ascendant in ♌. The nativity is in its 28th year <=336 months>. ♄ gives the first 57 to ♄, then 76 to ♂, 82 to ♀, 79 to ♅, 65 <?> to ♂, 70 <?> to the ♄, and 6 hours to the ☉.

Another distribution: multiply the minimum period of the star by 4, and give 25 to the ♄ and 6 hours to the ☉. ♄ will have 120 days because of ♄, /197P/ then ♂ 80, ♀ 32, ♅ 48, ♂ 60, the ♄ 25, and the ☉ 6 hours. Calculate the year from the Ascendant for day or night births.

Someone is in his 28th year <with a transmission> from  $\underline{\text{a}}$  to  $\text{V8}$ .  $\text{h}$  is in  $\underline{\text{a}}$ . The <count of> 28 stops in  $\text{Q}$ <sign of the  $\odot$ >. Therefore  $\text{h}$  transmits to the  $\odot$  in  $\underline{\text{a}}$ , and the  $\odot$  has the year. This method is approved by Egyptians, Babylonians, and Greeks. They distinguish the triangles in year 28 as follows:  $\text{f}$  is the ruler of the triangle. From  $\text{f}$  in  $\text{6}$ , the count stops in  $\underline{\text{a}}$ . For day births, the ruler of the triangle is  $\text{h}$  in  $\underline{\text{a}}$ .  $\text{h}$  receives the year from  $\text{f}$ . This distribution is at odds.

## 5.1 The Crisis Producing Place

In the previous books we explained the distributions with worked-out examples. Now in this book we will further clarify other powerful places and the keys which unlock the distributions of the stars.

With this having been established, it is necessary to prove by experience <the effectiveness of> still another place which I will demonstrate most abundantly: this is the Crisis-Producing Place, the place causative of terrors, dangers, and chains. Consequently this place is strong; for day births it is found by determining the distance from  $\mathfrak{h}$  to  $\mathfrak{m}$  (for night births, from  $\mathfrak{m}$  to  $\mathfrak{h}$ ), then measuring the same distance from the Ascendant<sup>2</sup>.

It will be necessary to examine the location of this place to see if the sign of a malefic, or malefics themselves, are in conjunction or aspect. If they are, the nativities will be precarious, endangered, and easily destroyed. The nature of each star and sign will cause the particular type <of trouble>. Benefics in conjunction or aspect will cause a lessening of the evil or an escape from crises.

It has seemed best to use the place in this way: if the  $\odot$  or  $\mathfrak{d}$  is found to be  $\mathfrak{x}$  to  $\mathfrak{h}$  or  $\mathfrak{m}$  (calculating by signs), the nativity will be at risk and subject to crises, particularly in the similar degrees/within 70° and in the listening signs. This is especially true at the time when one of the stars is making a transmission into the configuration described above.

For example: if the  $\odot$  transmits to  $\mathfrak{h}$  or the  $\mathfrak{d}$  to  $\mathfrak{m}$ , or if  $\mathfrak{h}$  or  $\mathfrak{m}$  transmits to the  $\odot$  or  $\mathfrak{d}$ , and if neither is at the same place, but one is  $\mathfrak{x}$  and the other is

---

<sup>2</sup>Others measure the distance from Mercury. - marginal note.



making the transmission or reception into the configuration described above from a position  $\square$ ,/209K/  $\Delta$ , in  $\text{♂}$ , or turned away—under these circumstances the nativity will be disturbed, will be involved in defense speeches, imprisonment, custody, or will have suspicions and crises /199P/ about such matters and will live with a bad conscience. But if a benefic is in conjunction with any of these stars or is in an appropriate aspect, the nativity will have a respite from terrors and dangers or a change to the better, but it will not continue to be undisturbed.

If the configuration happens to be afflicted and has no benefic in aspect, the native will be convicted and will come into chains, imprisonment, or custody.

If, with this configuration prevailing, the basis of the nativity is found to be great, at that time the native must have a care for his rank and livelihood: he will experience accusation and betrayal; he will defend himself before the authorities or the king—if not himself, then someone else—so that the terror and anguish <of this configuration> might be fulfilled. So great is this Place's power!

The full effects of the crisis (imprisonment and ruin) will come to pass if the overall and the yearly chronocrators take effect at the same time. The distribution using the cyclical chronocratorships will bring terrors and misery. If an infant nativity has this configuration, it will be necessary to forecast anxiety for the father or mother—or for the master, if the nativity is that of a slave. Note that some men, even while infants, come into imprisonment or confinement and spend their lives in such places. If some benefic is in transit or in aspect with this place at such times, a respite or relief from evil will occur; if a malefic is there, worse will occur; if a benefic and a malefic are there, good and bad will occur. In addition, if malefics are found in  $\text{♂}$  or  $\square$  with the  $\odot$  or the  $\text{♃}$ , they bring

anxieties and imprisonment.

If the nativity is found to be helped in some way by an aspect of benefics or by its general basis, with the result that there is no imprisonment, then there will be some figurative type of imprisonment or condemnation: military service, custodianship, debts, loans, to be assigned to convict-duty and to be put in charge of them, or (as often happens to many) to be required to do attendance because of the law or business. Some are fated to have unwanted experiences and to be unable to act as they desire. Some seem to be under the power of others; /210K/ even though they are free, they are punished by a bad conscience. Some travel abroad or sail, and are held somewhere on an island or in deserted places, or they do service in temples or sacred places. Occasionally they are confined by recurrent diseases or by epilepsy, fits, spells, blindness, the ague, and syndromes such as these.

It is necessary to make a careful decision about these places, /200P/ whether the “confinement” will be only figurative, or will be literal and involve some damaging accusation.

For example: ☉, ♃ in ♍, ♃, ☿, ♀, Ascendant in ♌, ♃ in Leo, ♂ in ♍. Both malefics were ✕ to the ☉ and ♃<sup>1</sup>.

If the luminaries had lacked the presence of benefics,

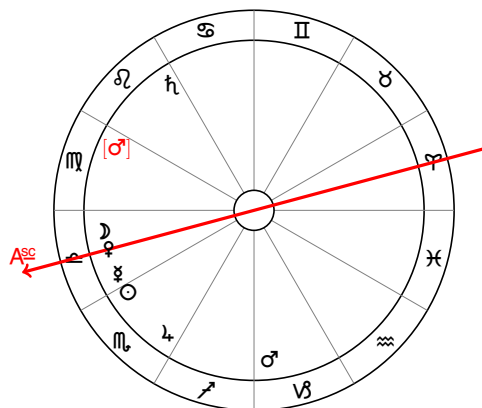


Figure 5.1: Chart 53 [V.1, GH L121]

<sup>1</sup> *Greek Horoscopes* dates the chart to October 27, 121 with all planets except ♂ in agreement stating “one must assume that the position of Mars is mistakenly given as Capricorn, instead of Virgo, probably on the basis of a misreading of the two symbols, which look often very similar” (p.118)

it would have been possible to forecast imprisonment. As it was, the configuration was magnificent and noteworthy. The native, a soldier, in his 35th year was in charge of prisoners and a prison. He fell in love with a woman in prison, was troubled by an accusation on her account, had expenses, but avoided the danger. At the same time he captured and bound a fugitive slave.

## 5.2 The Critical Year. The Ecliptic Place.

In order to complete this treatise, it is necessary to continue with the rest of the topics—now the critical year. The critical year is found from the transmission or reception of malefics in relation to the luminaries, the Ascendant, and each other.

The general procedure is as follows. In all cases, it is necessary to count off the years from the sign in the Ascendant. If the current year is found to be in the sign of the new or full moon, or in the sign in square or opposition to the <new or full moon> sign, the year will be critical and troublesome, especially if (under these circumstances) Saturn is found to be passing through the four places which just preceded the angles at the nativity. If the basis of the nativity is in accord, death will follow, bodily weakness, bleeding, dangerous diseases, hidden troubles, falls, sudden dangers.

Sometimes the critical point affects matters of livelihood and rank, if the bodily state is helped by an aspect of benefics. In addition, determine the distance from Saturn's position at the nativity to the ruler of the /**211K**/ new or full moon, then count that distance from the Ascendant. When Saturn transits that position or is in opposition or square with that position, death will occur, or a grave crisis to health or business.

Likewise the critical year will occur if Saturn is at the ascending or the descending node, or at the points square with these. If someone takes to his bed ill while the Sun is transiting /**201P**/ the ascending or descending node or through the points square with them, and if a malefic beholds the Sun, then the bout of disease will be dangerous and hazardous. Indications of the intensity or the danger will occur when the Moon transits the same places (the ascending <or descending> node).

Since the previously mentioned place (i.e. the ecliptic place) is powerful, I offer this advice to my readers, not with the idea that it is possible to appeal the decrees of fate and to act according to one's wishes, but <with the suggestion> that it is possible (I would certainly claim it to be so) for the initiates of this art to weaken the evil to some extent. For God, in his desire that man should foreknow the future, brought this science into the world, a science through which anyone can know his fate in order to bear the good with great contentment and the bad with great steadfastness.

Some things which must be guarded against are fore-known because of the conjunctions and aspects of the benefics. Nevertheless even if a benefic is able to do something, a malefic in conjunction or aspect will hinder the good. If either malefics alone or benefics alone are in conjunction or in configuration, with no aspect of the other, then the results will be definite.

Accordingly then, the initiates of this art, those wishing to have knowledge of the future, will be helped because they will not be burdened with vain hopes, will not expend grievous midnight toil, will not vainly love the impossible, nor in a like manner will they be carried away by their eagerness to attain what they may expect because of some momentary good fortune. A suddenly appearing good often grieves men as if it were an evil; a suddenly appearing evil causes the greatest misery to those who have not trained their minds in advance. So as not to be diverted and go into irrelevancies, <let us resume>.

It will be necessary to examine the sign in which the ascending node of each nativity is located: note whether it is tropic, solid, bicorporeal, and which star rules it. The effect of the sign will be weakened there. For we often find /212K/ that stars which normally can have some effect at the nativity or at transits have no effect in these places.

If they are at a phase while at the ascending or descending node, they become the causes of evil, especially if they are found to be retrograde or setting.

It will also be necessary to examine the current position of the ascending node in the year in question to see which Place of the nativity it is transiting, for in this case too the effects of the sign and its ruler /**202P**/ will be weakened. Especially if they are also found to be chronocrators, they can have no effect until the time when they pass out of that place.

### 5.3 Initiatives [Elections]

With reference to the days under investigation: if the moon is passing through the current position of the ascending node, or through the points in square or opposition, particularly if it is at the same degree position, beware of starting anything: do not sail, do not marry, do not have meetings, do not begin anything, do not plant, do not introduce; in short, do not do anything. What has been started will be judged insecure or prone to come to a bad end; it will be something regrettable, incomplete, subject to penalties, grievous, and not lasting.

If someone seems to have begun the development of some business in these days, the business will go bankrupt, will be troublesome, subject to penalties, easily ruined, and a stumbling block. Not even benefics which happen to be in these places do anything entirely good. Therefore, even without <consulting> a natal chart, if anyone guards against the current transits of the moon through the ascending node, he will not make a mistake.

If one finds someone beginning some matter while the moon is passing through the ecliptic places, he can forecast that the matter will be incomplete, regretted, and subject to penalties. I myself, being as wary of such days as I could be, have cast Initiatives for activities and friendships according to the chronocratorships of the current period, and I have considered the beginnnings to be unexceptionable and easily attainable.

But occasionally I have been in error because of the untimely presence of a friend, an untimely association, or because I began something under duress, and I found the results to be grievous or subject to penalties and delays. Consequently they <Initiatives> must be cast for all beginnings: the sailing of fleets, /**213K**/ campaigns, commands, advancement, departures—everything that can

come to accomplishment in life.

<Without the Initiatives> it is not beneficial to sacrifice to the gods or to dedicate sanctuaries. Prayers will not be fulfilled nor God be worshipped. He will be called lazy and inactive because oath-takers will be perjured and oaths will not be fulfilled. Neither gifts to the masses nor expenditures on buildings will be celebrated or lasting; they will be criticized and will crumble. Neither will the treatment of bodily ills be successful; men will be disease-ridden and incurable, especially if malefics are in aspect with these places or if the Moon is passing through their degree-positions. (If it is only in the same sign, it will be effective in a delayed and dilatory manner; but even so it will bring insecure/unsteady actions.)



**5.4 Critical Signs (4K, 3P)**

/203P/ The following signs are critical: Aries, Taurus, Cancer, <Leo, Libra,> Scorpio, <Capricorn,> Aquarius. When the years are in these signs, they are dangerous; the month will be evident when the sun is in them at the transmissions.

### 5.5 The Recasting of a Horoscope with Reference to the Topic of Propitious and Impropitious [Times]

We consider the recasting of horoscopes to be essential because the recasting contributes greatly to the temporal interchange of the chronocrators. Sometimes the recasting increases the strength of the results, sometimes it is indicative of delays in the results.

After we calculate precisely the positions of the stars on the birth date in the current year, we will find the Ascendant as follows: while the ☉ is still in the natal sign, we examine where the ☿ was then and when the ☿ will come to the exact same degree where it was at the nativity, and we call that point the Ascendant. If that exact degree is found to be during the day, even though the nativity was nocturnal, we examine the diurnal houserulers, the ruler of the term, and of the Ascendant in order to find their relationships to the stars at the nativity.

### 5.6 The Operative Month: For Day Births, From the Current Sun to the Moon at Birth, and the Same Distance from the Ascendant (6K, 4P)

The King had this opinion about the operative month: determine the distance from the ☉'s current position to the ☾'s position at birth, then count that distance from the Ascendant.

It will be necessary to examine the ruler of the sign where the count stops to see if it is in operative signs, and to make a judgement about the stars in conjunction or in aspect, whether benefic or malefic. (For day births, determine the distance from the ☾'s current position to the ☉'s position at birth; count that from the Ascendant.)

Some astrologers note the ruler of the degree-position of the new or full moon and forecast according to that "month." Some consider the following month to be effective: note the configuration which the ☾ at the nativity was found to have with the ☉; whenever it has the same configuration with the current ☉, it will determine the month. /204P/ For example: ☉ in ♏ 5°, ☾ in ♊ 2°. The distance from the ☉ to the ☾ is 81°.

When the ☾ is the same distance from the ☉ in any month, i.e. when it has the same configuration as it had at the nativity, it will indicate the <operative> month.

In my experience, those months in which the distribution of the years occur have seemed to be operative. When the ☉ is in those places or at the points in square or opposition to them, it will make a forecast of the results which are indicated for the year or for the transmissions.

In the same way ♂, ♀, ☿, and the ☾, when they are passing through the places mentioned above, will be indicative. We will judge that place to be even more effective in producing results, if these stars are passing through

a phase while transiting the place. At that time innovations and activities in business will occur.

If the sign  $<?>$  is passing out of whatever configuration the it has, there will be no change or innovation, nor a fulfillment of the expected outcome. However, the  $\odot$  passing through these places and arousing the power of the chronocrators is very effective.

## 5.7 The Operative and the Inauspicious Day. This is the Real Distribution of the Days

**/215K/** To find the operative and the inauspicious day, calculate as follows: multiply the full years of the nativity by  $5 \frac{1}{4}$ . Determine the days from the birth date to the day in question. Add this figure to the previous result and divide by 12. Count the remainder from the Ascendant, giving one to each sign. (A few astrologers count from the sign just following the ♃.) We examine the sign where the count stops to see if it is operative or not.

It is necessary to note how the Moon and its inclination are configured with respect to the sign. If on the day in question the Moon is in aspect with the sign of its inclination, and if they are in operative signs, the day will be fine, noteworthy, profitable. <If they are in inoperative signs, the day will be average.> I

DELINEATION  
NOTE

If the day and the inclination of the Moon are found in the same sign, results will be even better. If on that day the Moon is turned away from the inclination, but both are in operative signs, the day will be average, not entirely inauspicious. If they are in the other signs, the day will be miserable, hurtful, and dangerous.

It is necessary to examine how the ruler of the day is configured, which stars it has in aspect, whether it is in the same sign, an operative sign, **/205P/** or a turned-away sign. <It is also necessary to examine> how the stars in transit are situated with respect to the day and its ruler. The quality of the day will be evident from the nature of each sign and star. If a nativity has the day in a given sign, and there is a transit or aspect of a star with that day, the day will be operative for good or bad depending on the stars in conjunction. It is the same as the results indicated by the year: the day will be effective for those results when it comes to the places

DELINEATION  
NOTE

of the transmissions and receptions and to the points in square or opposition to these places.

An example: Hadrian year 4, Mechir 13, the first hour of the night. I am investigating Antoninus year 20, Phaophi 10. <36 full years multiplied by 5 1/4 gives 189.> There are 243 <days from Mechir 13 to Phaophi 10>, and altogether they total 432. I subtract 360 for a result of 72. I count this from the Ascendant in ♍ and stop at ♎. The day just precedes an angle <Ascendant>. The ☉, the ruler at the nativity, was in opposition to the /216K/ day (because the ☉ at the nativity was in ♊), ♂ was in transit, and the ♃ in ♋ was turned away. The day was precarious. In addition it was in the <XII> Place having to do with slaves; the native became enraged at a slave.

<It is necessary to note how the day and its ruler are configured together, what stars are in aspect with this place and its ruler, and at what phase they are (i.e. morning or evening rising, whether eastern, western, or acronychal, whether they are at the first or second stationary point, or are proceeding with their proper motions) and whether they are in their houses, triangles, or exaltations.> ... This too is a scientific method: the signs in which the Sun is located foretell the outcome of the month...

DELINEATION  
NOTE

5.8 The Inclinations of the Moon At the First of the Month, Starting with Leo, then the Others Signs in Order

We have had to append the inclinations of the Moon: when the ☾ is in conjunction with the ☼ in ♌ and has its first visibility in ♌, it inclines towards <♊>. Then in ♍ it inclines towards <♈>, in ♍ it inclines towards <♊>, in ♍ it inclines towards <♊>, in ♍ it inclines towards <♊>, in ♍ it inclines towards <♊>.

It is clear that, when the Moon is passing to the full-moon phase, it makes its first quarter looking towards the East. It diminishes in its second quarter looking towards the West. When waning in ♋ it inclines towards ♊, then in ♋ it inclines towards ♋, in ♋ it inclines towards <♍> /206P/, in <♈> it inclines towards <♍>, in ♊ it inclines towards ♌, and in ♌ it inclines towards ♌. Six signs are towards the East, six towards the West.

Table 5.1: Inclinations of the Moon

New Moon in	Current ☾	
	Waxing	Waning
	Inclines toward	Inclines Toward
♌ <sup>1</sup>	♌ to ♌	♌ to ♌
	♌ to ♊	♊ to ♌
	♌ to ♈	♈ to ♌
	♌ to ♈	♈ to ♌
	♌ to ♊	♊ to ♌
	♌ to ♋	♋ to ♌
♌	♌ to ♌	♌ to ♌
	♌ to ♌	♌ to ♌

<sup>1</sup>These are the inclinations of the New Moon in ♌ as given in the first paragraphs; included here to provide a complete tabular view.

Table 5.1: Inclinations of the Moon

New Moon in	Current ☾	
	Waxing	Waning
	Inclines toward	Inclines Toward
	♌ to ☿	☿ to ♈
	♍ to ♊	♊ to ♋
	♎ to ♋	♋ to ♌
	♏ to ♍	♍ to ♎
♏	♏ to ♎	♎ to ♏
	♌ to ♋	♋ to ♌
	♍ to ♊	♊ to ♍
	♎ to ☿	☿ to ♎
	♏ to ♊	♊ to ♏
	♍ to ♋	♋ to ♍
♌	♌ to ♏	♏ to ♌
	♍ to ♎	♎ to ♍
	♎ to ♋	♋ to ♎
	♏ to ♊	♊ to ♏
	♍ to ☿	☿ to ♍
	♌ to ♊	♊ to ♌
♍	♍ to ♌	♌ to ♍
	♎ to ♏	♏ to ♎
	♏ to ♎	♎ to ♏
	♍ to ♋	♋ to ♍
	♌ to ♊	♊ to ♌
	♊ to ☿	☿ to ♊
♎	♎ to ♍	♍ to ♎
	♏ to ♌	♌ to ♏
	♍ to ♌	♌ to ♍
	♏ to ♊	♊ to ♏



Table 5.1: Inclinations of the Moon

Current ☾		
	Waxing	Waning
New Moon in	Inclines toward	Inclines Toward
♌	♐ to ♋	♋ to ♐
	♈ <sup>1</sup> to ♊	♊ to ♈
	♌ to ♍	♍ to ♌
	♎ to ♏	♏ to ♎
	♋ to ♌	♌ to ♋
	♐ to ♑	♑ to ♐
	♈ to ♉	♉ to ♈
♍	♍ to ♌	♌ to ♍
	♎ to ♏	♏ to ♎
	♏ to ♐	♐ to ♏
	♐ to ♑	♑ to ♐
	♑ to ♒	♒ to ♑
	♒ to ♓	♓ to ♒
♎	♎ to ♏	♏ to ♎
	♏ to ♐	♐ to ♏
	♐ to ♑	♑ to ♐
	♑ to ♒	♒ to ♑
	♒ to ♓	♓ to ♒
	♓ to ♔	♔ to ♓
♏	♏ to ♐	♐ to ♏
	♐ to ♑	♑ to ♐
	♑ to ♒	♒ to ♑
	♒ to ♓	♓ to ♒
	♓ to ♔	♔ to ♓
	♔ to ♕	♕ to ♔
♐	♐ to ♑	♑ to ♐
	♑ to ♒	♒ to ♑
	♒ to ♓	♓ to ♒
	♓ to ♔	♔ to ♓
	♔ to ♕	♕ to ♔

<sup>1</sup> /207P/

<sup>2</sup> /218K/

Table 5.1: Inclinations of the Moon		
New Moon in	Current ☾	
	Waxing	Waning
	Inclines toward	Inclines Toward
♌	♏ to ♍	♍ to ♏
	♌ to ♎	♎ to ♌
	♐ to ♏	♏ to ♐
	♑ to ♏	♏ to ♑
	♒ to ♏	♏ to ♒
	♓ to ♏	♏ to ♓
	♈ to ♏	♏ to ♈
♍	♍ to ♌	♌ to ♍
	♎ to ♍	♍ to ♎
	♏ to ♍	♍ to ♏
	♐ to ♍	♍ to ♐
	♑ to ♍	♍ to ♑
	♒ to ♍	♍ to ♒
	♓ to ♍	♍ to ♓

The following signs are critical: ♎, ♌, ♏, ♐, ♑, ♒, ♓, ♈, ♉. The years occurring in these signs are dangerous. The month will be evident when the Sun is in these signs in the transmissions.